



Lessons in language English

Beginners Lessons in
Speaking and Writing English

By
ASSOCIATION SAADA CASABLANCA

دروس الدعم و التقوية
في اللغة الانجليزية



A.S.C

ENGLISH

LANGUAGE

INTRODUCTION

LANGUAGE IS POWER



INTRODUCTION

* The Importance of English

English is everywhere

English language opens a window into the world and gives us the opportunity to learn a lot of new and interesting things, makes it possible to communicate with people from other countries, helps us to travel around the world.



English is a West Germanic language that was first spoken in early medieval England and is now a global *lingua franca*.^{[4][5]} Named after the *Angles*, one of the Germanic tribes that migrated to the area of Britain that would later take their name, *England*, both names ultimately deriving from the *Anglia* peninsula in the *Baltic Sea*. It is closely related to the *Frisian languages*, but its vocabulary has been significantly influenced by other Germanic languages, particularly *Norse* (a North Germanic language), as well as by *Latin* and *French*.^[6]

English has developed over the course of more than 1,400 years. The earliest forms of English, a set of *Anglo-Frisian* dialects brought to Great Britain by Anglo-Saxon settlers in the 5th century, are called *Old English*. *Middle English* began in the late 11th century with the *Norman conquest of England* and was a period in which the language was influenced by *French*.^[7] *Early Modern English* began in the late 15th century with the introduction of the *printing press* to London, the printing of the *King James Bible* and the start of the *Great Vowel Shift*.^[8]

Through the worldwide influence of the *British Empire*, modern English spread around the world from the 17th to mid-20th centuries. Through all types of printed and electronic media, and spurred by the emergence of the United States as a global *superpower*, English has become the *leading language* of international discourse and the *lingua franca* in many regions and professional contexts such as science, navigation and law.^[9]

English is the *third most spoken native language* in the world, after *Standard Chinese* and *Spanish*.^[10] It is the most widely learned *second language* and is either the *official language* or one of the official languages in almost 60 *sovereign states*. There are more people who have learned it as a second language than there are native speakers. English is the most commonly spoken language in the *United Kingdom*, the *United States*, *Canada*, *Australia*, *Ireland* and *New Zealand*, and it is widely spoken in some areas of the *Caribbean*, *Africa* and *South Asia*.^[11] It is a *co-official language of the United Nations*, the *European Union* and many other world and regional international organisations. It is the most widely spoken Germanic language, accounting for at least 70% of speakers of this Indo-European branch. English has a vast *vocabulary*, though counting how many words any language has is impossible.^{[12][13]} English speakers are called "Anglophones".

Modern *English grammar* is the result of a gradual change from a typical Indo-European dependent marking pattern with a rich *inflectional morphology* and relatively free *word order* to a mostly analytic pattern with little *inflection*, a fairly fixed *SVO word order* and a complex *syntax*.^[14] Modern English relies more on *auxiliary verbs* and *word order* for the expression of complex *tenses*, *aspect* and *mood*, as well as *passive constructions*, *interrogatives* and some *negation*. Despite noticeable variation among the *accents* and *dialects of English* used in different countries and regions—in terms of *phonetics* and *phonology*, and sometimes also *vocabulary*, *grammar* and *spelling*—English-speakers from around the world are able to communicate with one another with *relative ease*.

English

Pronunciation	/ˈɪŋɡlɪʃ/^[1]
Region	Worldwide
Native speakers	360–400 million (2006) ^[2] L2 speakers: 400 million; as a foreign language: 600–700 million^[2]
Language family	Indo-European - Germanic - West Germanic - Anglo-Frisian - Anglic - English
Early forms	Old English - Middle English - Early Modern English
Writing system	Latin script (English alphabet) Anglo Saxon runes (Historically) English Braille, Unified English Braille
Signed forms	Manually coded English (multiple systems)

Official status

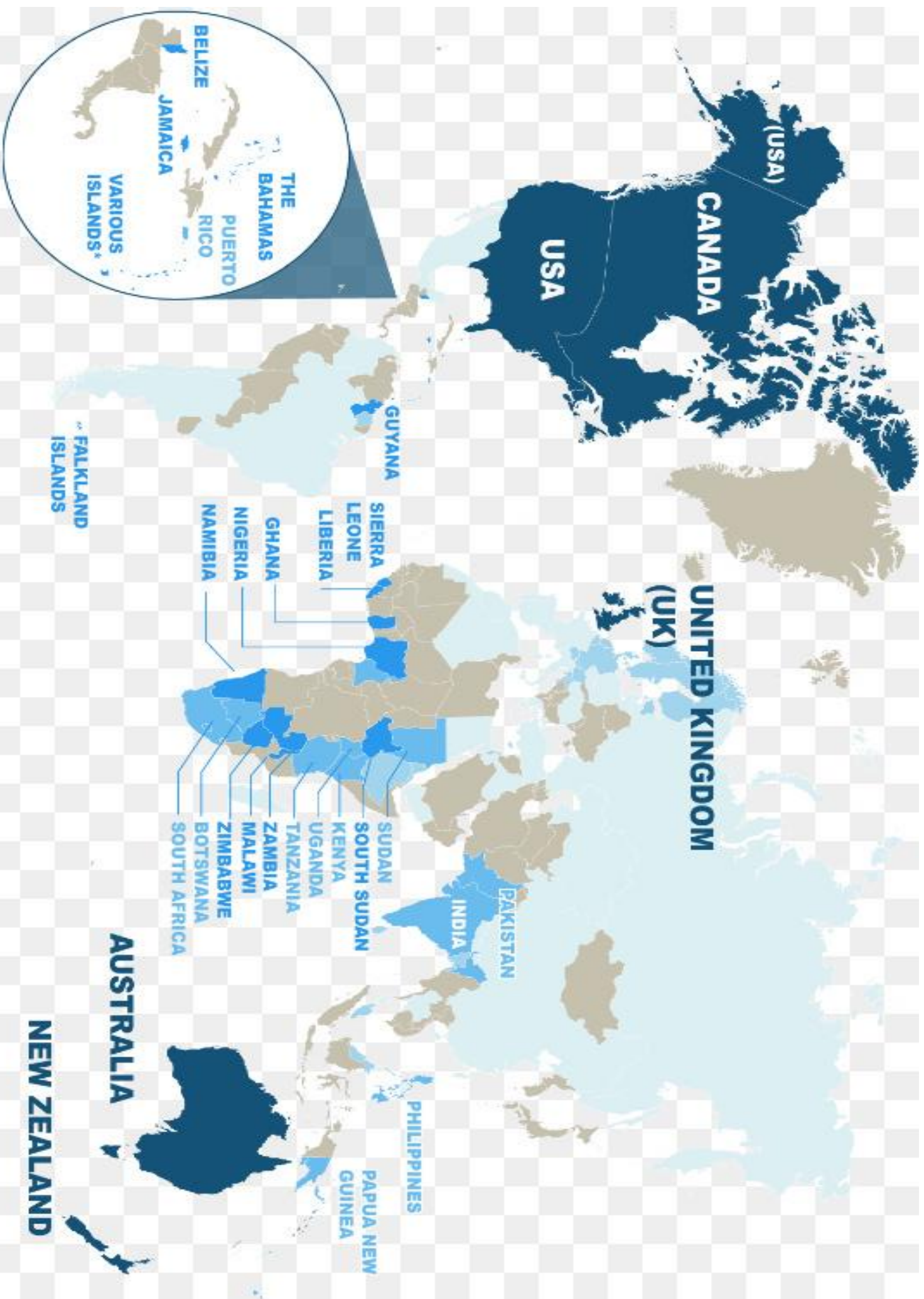
Official language in	67 countries 27 non-sovereign entities Various organisations [show]
----------------------	--

Language codes

ISO 639-1	en
ISO 639-2	eng
ISO 639-3	eng
Glottolog	stan1293 [3]
Linguasphere	52-ABA

Countries of the world where English is a majority native language

Countries where English is official but not a majority native language



Parts of Speech

أقسام الكلام

مثال	تعريف	
Ahmed, book		Noun اسم
I, he, she, it, etc.	هو ما يدل على اسم أو يحل محله	Pronoun ضمير
Play, played, will play	هو ما يدل على حدوث شيء في وقت ما	Verb فعل
rich man رجل غني لاحظ أن الصفة هنا سبقت الاسم الموصوف بعكس اللغة العربية التي تكون فيها الصفة بعد الاسم الموصوف	هو عبارة عن كلمة تصف الاسم وتكون قبله	Adjective صفة
Ahmed writes quickly. أحمد يكتب بسرعة.	هو عبارة عن كلمة تصف الفعل أو تزيد الصفة وضوحاً	Adverb حال

مثال	تعريف	
Ahmed goes to school أحمد يذهب إلى المدرسة They traveled by plane هم سافروا بالطائرة	هو كلمة تأتي مع الاسم أو الضمير لتبين علاقته بكلمة أخرى	Preposition حرف الجر
Ali and Ahmad visited us yesterday. علي و أحمد زارونا أمس	هو كلمة تصل ما بين كلمة و كلمة أو جملة وجملة .	Conjunction حرف العطف
Alas! She died. يا للأسف ! لقد ماتت.	هو عبارة عن أصوات أو صيحات تعبر عن التعجب	Interjection حرف تعجب

مثال	تعريف	
	هناك ثلاث أدوات في اللغة الإنجليزية: a, an, the	
This is a book. هذا كتاب.	تستخدم قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يبدأ بحرف ساكن. a	
This is an apple. هذه تفاحة.	تستخدم قبل الاسم النكرة الذي يبدأ بحرف متحرك. an	
This is the book I bought yesterday. هذا هو الكتاب الذي اشتريته أمس.	تستخدم للتعريف. the	

ملاحظة :

الجدير بالذكر أن الجملة الإنجليزية لابد وأن تحتوي على فعل
خلاف اللغة العربية التي قد تكون فيها الجملة اسمية أي بدون
فعل مثل : (علي طبيب) ولو أردنا ترجمتها إلى الإنجليزية
حرفيا نقول :

Ali doctor.

وهذه جملة إنجليزية خاطئة لعدم احتوائها على فعل والصحيح أن
نضع لها فعل فتصبح :

Ali is a doctor



PRONUNCIATION RULES

دروس الدعم و التثنية
في اللغة الانجليزية

قواعد النطق

English Alphabetic
الأبجدية الانجليزية



English Alphabetic

الأبجدية الإنجليزية

1. Capital Letters الأبجدية الإنجليزية الكبيرة

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z

2. Small Letters الأبجدية الإنجليزية الصغيرة

a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

• Consonant Letters الحروف الساكنة

b	c	d	f	g	h	j	k	l	m	n	p	q	r	s	t	v	w	x	y	z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

• Vowel Letters الحروف المتحركة

a	e	i	o	u
---	---	---	---	---

قواعد نطق الحرف A

1. يلفظ حرف (a) كحرف الياء إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف (e) أمثلة:

اسم — Name — تيم
شهرة — Fame — فيم
تاريخ، زمن — Date — ديت

2. يلفظ حرف (a) في الكلمات الثلاثية كالألف الممدودة في اللغة العربية وفي بعض الكلمات الرباعية والخماسية أمثلة:

بعيد — Far — فار
خريطة — Map — ماب
ارض — Land — لاند
وقف، قاعدة — Stand — ستاند

3. إذا كان حرف (a) متبوعاً بحرف (i) مباشرة فإنه ينطق كحرف الياء أمثلة:

شعر — Hair — هير
ذيل — Tail — تيل

4. إذا كان حرف (a) متبوعاً بحرف (u) فإنه ينطق كحرف (o) أمثلة:

خريف — Autumn — أوتم
شهر آب — August — أوغست

5. إذا كان حرف (a) متبوعاً بحرف (w) وكان الحرف الذي بعدهما ساكناً يلفظ كحرف (o) أمثلة:

متقب، مخرز — Awl — أول

مخيف — Awful — أوفل

6. إذا كان حرف (a) متبوعاً بحرفي (ll) فإنه ينطق كحرف (o) أمثلة:

قاعة — Hall — هول
صغير — Small — سمول

قواعد نطق الحرف B

B

الحرف B ينطق (بي) وكصوت /b/ ينطق (با)

1- لا يلفظ الحرف (b) إذا جاء بعد الحرف (m) أمثلة:

يخدر، يفقد الحس Numb — نم

قبلة Bomb — بُم

الرصاص Plumber — بلمر

2- لا ينطق في بعض الكلمات التي تأتي الـ b ويلحقه حرف الـ t ..

مثال: doubt وتنطق (داوت) وليس (داوبت) ..

3- إذا سبق الحرف B بـ حرف n، فإن حرف الـ n يتحول إلى حرف m

في بعض الحالات إن سبق حرف الـ b حروف معينة يتغير النطق للكلمة،

مثال Don't bother لاحظوا أن حرف الـ t سبق بحرف n إذا لا ينطق حرف الـ t فتنطق الكلمة (Don bother) ..

ولكن هنا حرف الـ b سبق بحرف الـ n .. إذاً هنا حرف الـ n يتحول إلى حرف m ..

فتنطق الكلمة هنا (Dom bother - داومبادر) .. مثلها مثل بعض الكلمات في اللغة العربية،

مثل: كلمة (الانبياء) لاحظوا أنها تنطق (الامبياء) ..

أمثلة أخرى .. Ten Birds = عشرة طيور .. تنطق (تيم برذر) وليس (تن برذر)

4- إذا سبق الحرف B بـ حرف d فإن حرف الـ b يطفا على حرف الـ d

Good bye تنطق (جوباي) وليس (جود باي) .. حرف الـ b يطفا على حرف الـ d

ملاحظة: هناك حرف آخر في اللغة الانكليزية يشابه هذا الحرف في النطق.

إنه الحرف P وينطق (بي)، وكصوت ينطق /p/ (بيه) .. الـ (ه) = اندفاع هواء وليس حرف

b

قواعد نطق الحرف C

لهذا الحرف ثمانى مجموعات سوف نستعرض مجموعتين

(1) المجموعة cc

لهذه المجموعة لفظان وذلك حسب موقعها من الكلمة:

أ - إذا أتى بعدها أحد الحروف التالية **y, l, e** وبعده ساكن فيلفظ الحرف **c** كالرمز اللفظي **k** والحرف الثانى كالرمز اللفظي **s** أمثلة:

accidental, success, accept, access

ب - وإذا أتى بعدها غير ماسبق فتلفظ المجموعة بكاملها كالرمز اللفظي **k**

account, accurate, accommodation, according to

(2) المجموعة ch

إذا سبق الحرف **t** المجموعة **ch** فتلفظ كـ (شش) أمثلة:

match, scratch, stitch, watch, butcher, kitchen

وإذا لم يسبق المجموع **ch** حرف **t** فهناك ثلاث حالات لفظية هي:

أ - فى قليل من الكلمات تلفظ كـ (ش) أمثلة :

Chicago, launch, moustache

ب - وتلفظ فى بعض الكلمات كـ (H) أمثلة:

each, March, much, chair, change

ج - وتلفظ كالرمز اللفظي **k** اذا وقعت بعد الحرف **s** أمثلة:

school, scholar, scholarship, character, chemistry

لا تلفظ المجموعة **ch** فى الكلمات **Yacht, fuchsia, schismatic**

قواعد نطق الحرف C

2

(3) المجموعة **ci** تلفظ المجموعة **ci** كـ (ش) اذا جاء بعدها صوتي أمثلة:

physician , politician , social , sufficient , ancient

(4) المجموعة **ck** تلفظ المجموعة **ck** كالرمز اللفظي **k** أمثلة :

Clock , kick , knock , attack , back , black , brick

(5) المجموعة **cea** كـ (ش) مثال: **Ocean**

(6) المجموعة **ce** كـ (ش) مثال: **Psittaceus**

(7) المجموعة **cz** تلفظ المجموعة **cz** كـ (تش) في: **Czechoslovakian**

(8) المجموعة **cq** تلفظ المجموعة **cq** كالرمز اللفظي **k** أمثلة :

Acquisition , lacquer

قواعد نطق الحرف D

1- حرف الـ D مثل حرف الـ د في اللغة العربية

أول الكلمة

Dad داد Dog دوج Door دوور Desk ديسك

في آخر الكلمة

D

طعام Food فود

حزين Sad ساد

طريق Road روود

2- لا يلفظ الحرف (d) إذا جاء في وسط الكلمة قبل الحرف (n)

d

يوم الاربعاء Wednesday ونزدي

وسيم Handsome هانسام

قواعد نطق الحرف E

E

1 إذا وجد الحرف (e) في الكلمة فإنه ينطق مابين الفتح والكسر أمثلة:

سرير—Bed— بد خيمة—Tent— تينت

2 إذا كان حرف (e) مضعفاً أي (ee) فأنهما يلفظان كحرف الياء أمثلة:

عميق—Deep— ديب شجرة—Tree— تري غزال—Deer— دير

3 إذا كان حرف (e) متبوعاً بحرف (a) فإنه يلفظ كحرف الياء أمثلة:

مقعد—Seat— سيٲ من فضلك—Please— بليز

ولهذه القاعدة شواذ:- خبز—Bread— برد ميت—Dead— بد

4 لا يلفظ الحرف (e) في نهاية جميع الكلمات أمثلة:

شاطيء—Shore— شور حياة—Life— لايف

5 لا يلفظ الحرف (e) إذا جاء في بداية الكلمة وجاء بعده الحرف (u) أمثلة:

صوت عذب—Euphony— يوفني

ملاحظة: يلفظ الحرف (u) في هذه القاعدة (يو)

e

● يؤثر حرف (e) على حرف (a) في بعض الكلمات مثل

سيارة Car تنطق كار - يعتني Care كير

قبعة Hat تنطق هات - يكره Hate هيت

● يؤثر حرف (e) على حرف (u) في بعض الكلمات مثل

كوب Cub كوب - مكعب Cube كيوب

يقطع Cut كت - طريف Cute كيوت

قواعد نطق الحرف F

حرف الـ F ينطق مثل حرف الـ ف في اللغة العربية
مثال

سمكة fish فيش - طعام food فوود - مروحة Fan فان

١- ينطق حرف F مثل حرفي GH في آخر الكلمة و مثل حرفي PH

كاف enough إيناف- يضحك laugh لاف - قاسي tough تاف
فيل elephant إيليفانت - تليفون phone فون - صورة photo فوتو

٢- نعلم أن في حالة الجمع يتم إضافة حرف الـ S
لكن في حالة نهاية الكلمة بـ F أو بـ FE ينتهي جمعها بـ ves

زوجة wife - زوجات wives

حياة life - حيوات lives

لص thief - لصوص thieves

وهناك حالات شاذة

roof:roofs سقف - أسقف

chief:chiefs رئيس - رؤساء

giraffe:giraffes زرافة - زرافات

قواعد نطق الحرف G

١- حرف (g) له نطقين احياناً ينطق كالجيم السعودية و احياناً كالجيم المصرية

والقاعدة هي : إذا جاء بعده احد الاحرف (e) (i) (y) ينطق كالجيم السعودية أمثلة:

عام — General — جنرال
برتقالة — orange — أورانج
مهندس — Engineer — انجنيير

G

لكن هناك شواذ لهذه القاعدة مثل :-

بنت — girl — جيرل
يحصل على - get — جيت
يعطي — give — جيف

وإذا جاء بعده أي حرف غيرها وإذا جاء في آخر الكلمة كالجيم المصرية

بذهب - go - جو
كلب - dog - دوج
لعبة - game - جيم
شنطة - bag - باج

٢- لا يلفظ هذا الحرف إذا سبقه الحرف (i) وتلاه الحرف (n) ووقع (n) في آخر الكلمة

علامة، رمز — Sign — ساين
خبث، ضار — Malign — ملاين
أجنبي — forign — فورين

g

ملاحظة: يلفظ حرف (i) ممدوداً في هذه القاعدة

٣- لا ينطق أيضاً إذا سبقه (u) وتلاه (n)

وايضا لا ينطق إذا جاء في أول الكلمة وتلاه (n)

يناقش — Oppugn — أوبيون
يرعج — gnaw — نوو

قواعد نطق الحرف H

يلفظ حرف H كما يلفظ حرف ال هاء في اللغة العربية

١- لا يلفظ الحرف (h) إذا أتى مباشرة بعد الحرف (g) وتلاهما حرفاً صوتياً أمثلة:

شيخ _____ Ghost _____ وست _____ قبعة _____ Leghorn _____ ورن

٢- لا يلفظ الحرف (h) إذا أتى مباشرة بعد الحرف (d) مثال:

البوذية _____ Buddhism _____ بودزم

٣- لا يلفظ إذا أتى في أول الكلمة وتلاه الحرفان (n) (o) أمثلة:

احترام، شرف _____ Honour _____ أونور - صادق _____ Honest _____ أونست

٤- لا يلفظ إذا جاء بعد (r) أمثلة:

قافية _____ Rhyme _____ ريم - إيقاع _____ Rhythm _____ رذم

٥- لا ينطق الحرف (h) إذا جاء بعد الحرف (w) أمثلة:

أبيض _____ White _____ وايت

ومثل أدوات السؤال .

When _____ وين - Why _____ واي - Where _____ وير - What _____ وات - Wich _____ ويتش

٦- ويحدث العكس إذا جاء (o) بعد (h) ينطق (h) ولا ينطق (w) أمثلة:

من _____ Who _____ هُو - بيع الجملة _____ Wholesale _____ هوك ستيل

٧- لا ينطق حرف (h) في نهاية جميع الكلمات مثل:

مروحة _____ Punkah _____ بانك

٨- لا ينطق حرف (h) إذا جاء بعد حرف (e) وتلاهما حرفاً صوتياً مثل:

عنيف _____ Vehement _____ فيمُنت - عربة _____ Vehicle _____ في ايكل

٩- ينطق حرف (h) إذا جاء بعد حرف (c) تش مثل :

chair- تشاير - teach - تيتش

ملحوظة : لا يلفظ (h) إذا أتى بعد الحرف (c) وتلاهما حرف صوتي مثل:

انفصال _____ Schism _____ سزم - مدرسة _____ School _____ سكول

١٠- ينطق حرف (h) إذا جاء بعد حرف (s) ش مثل :

short- شورث - brush براش

١١- سبق شرح ينطق حرف (h) إذا جاء بعد حرف (p) ف :

phone فون elephant إلفانت



قواعد نطق الحرف |

1 إذا جاء حرف (i) في الكلمة يلفظ مثل الكسرة أمثلة:

في — In — ان

يضرب — Hit — هت

اجلس — Sit — ست

2 إذا جاء حرف (i) في وسط الكلمة أو في بدايتها وكانت منتهية بحرف (e) يلفظ كما هو في حروف الهجاء (أي) أمثلة:

وقت — Time — تايم

يسوق — Drive — درايف

ثلج — Ice — آيس

ولهذه القاعدة شواذ:- يعيش، يسكن — Live — ليف

منذ — Since — سينس

3 إذا جاء حرفا (gh) بعد حرف (i) فأنهما لا يلفظان ويلفظ حرف (i) ممدوداً أمثلة:

قريب من — Nigh — ناي

عالي — High — هاي

قواعد نطق الحرف (J & K)

كيفية نطق الحروف الانجليزية (J - K)

كيفية نطق الحرف J

ينطق حرف J كما ينطق حرف الـ ج في اللغة العربية

J

برطمان jar جار
موضوع subject سايحيكت
يرفض reject ريجيكت
جاكت jacket جاك
عصير juice جوس

كيفية نطق الحرف K

ينطق حرف K كما ينطق حرف الـ ك في اللغة العربية

*لاينطق حرف الـ k اذا جاء بعده حرف الـ n مثل

K

يعرف know نو
سكينة knife نيف
يطرق knock نوك

قواعد نطق الحرف L

ينطق حرف **L** كما ينطق حرف الـ لام في اللغة العربية

لمبة Lamp - لامب - ليمونة Lemon - ليمون - لبن Milk - ميلك

- لا ينطق هذا الحرف إذا جاء قبل الأحرف (d)(f)(k) أمثلة:

L

يمكن أن — Could — كود

نصف — Half — هاف

كلام — Talk — توك

ولهذه القاعدة شواهد:-

I

ذئب — Wolf — تتطق ولف.

العالم — World — تتطق وورد.

الذهب — Gold — تتطق جولد

M & N قواعد نطق الحرف

كيفية نطق حرف M

ينطق حرف M كما ينطق حرف ال ميم في اللغة العربية...

M

لبن milk ميلك

رجل man مان

تعالى come كام

غرفة room رووم

مال money مانى

أسرار نطق الحروف الانجليزية M & N

كيفية نطق حرف N

ينطق حرف N كما ينطق حرف ال نون في اللغة العربية...

N

لطيف nice نايس

بطيخ melon ميلون

شبكة net شبكة

أنف nose نور

أعمى blind بلايند

**لا ينطق هذا الحرف إذا جاء بعد (m) مباشرة خاصة في نهاية الكلمة أمثلة:

يرسم Limn — لِم

اللعنة Damn — دَام

قواعد نطق الحرف O



ينطق حرف O كما ينطق حرف الالف المضموم في اللغة العربية

مثل :- أفتح open أوبن

* لكن هناك بعض التركيبات في حرف الـ O سنتناولها كالتالي :-

١. يلفظ التركيب oa كلفظ الحرف O في الأبجدية الانكليزية

Boat قارب بوت Road طريق رود Soap صابون سوب Goat معزة جوت
Coal فحم كول Coat معطف كوت

٢. يلفظ التركيب (o_e) كلفظ الحرف O في الأبجدية الانكليزية

Stone حجرة ستون Note ملاحظة نوت Mode طرار مود

Smoke يدخن سموك Pole قطب پول Code شفرة كود

٣. إذا أتى الحرف V أو الحرف S بين التركيب (o_e) فإن الحرف O يلفظ كالضمة الممدودة (واو مشبعة)

Prove يبرهن، برووف Move يتحرك مووف Approve يوافق ابرووف

Remove يزيل، رمووف Lose يخسر، لوزر Whose لمن؟ شووز

كلمات شاذة : في الكلمات التالية يلفظ الحرف O كالفتحة المفحمة

Glove قفاز جلاف Above فوق أبايف Some بعض سام

Overcome يهزم اوفركرم Become يصبح بيكام Come يأتي كام

٤. إذا جاء حرف (o) منفرداً في الكلمة يلفظ كما هو في الحروف الهجائية أمثلة:

شكل Form — فورم قلعة Fort — فورت

٥. إذا كان حرف (o) متبوعاً بحرف (a) يبقى لفظه على حالة أي كما هو في الحروف الهجائية لكن مع قليل في المد في اللفظ أمثلة:

عريض Broad — بروود هدف Goal — وول ماعز Goat — ووت

٦. ويلفظ كذلك إذا جاء بعده (w) أحياناً أمثلة:

منخفض Low — لو بطيء Slow — سلو

ويشذ عن هذه القاعدة بعض الكلمات مثل:-

تاج Crown — كراون تحت Down — داون

٧. لا يلفظ الحرف (o) إذا وقع قبله أو بعده الحرف (e) مثل:

الناس People — بيل الجنين Foetus — فيتس العنقاء phoenix — فينكس



قواعد نطق الحرف P

P

١- ينطق حرف P كما ينطق حرف ال باء المضعف في اللغة العربية

* قلم جاف pen بن * يصلي pray براي
* دبوس pin بين * ورقة paper بير

٢- لا ينطق هذا الحرف إذا جاء قبل (s) خاصة في كلمات علم النفس
الروح —Psyche— صايكي مزيف —Pseudo— سيؤدو

٣- سبق ذكر في درس حرف h أن حرف p إذا جاء قبل حرف h ينطق فاء
مثل تلفون phone فون

٤- هناك حرف آخر في اللغة الانكليزية يشابه هذا الحرف في النطق الى حد ما
إنه الحرف b
إذا كيف نفرق ما بين P و B ؟

١ الحرف P يمكن أن يكون ملحق بحرف s ولكنه لا ينطق كما ذكرنا ، مثال:
psychology = علم النفس وتنطق هذه الكلمة "سايكولوجي" باللغة الانكليزية
البريطانية-او تنطق "سايكالاجي" باللغة الانكليزية الامريكية.
اما الحرف B لا يلحق بحرف s

٢ حرف ال P يمكن أن يسبق ب حرف s مثل Spring -sport-spell
ولكن الحرف B لا يمكن

إذا كيف نعبر عن الحرف p وكيف نعبر عن الحرف B ؟
الاجابة- مجرد التوضيح فقط- نكتب فوق حرف P حرف (h) صغيرة، فيكون بهذا
الشكل Ph

لاحظ الفرق في الكلمات من ناحية النطق والمعنى
يصلي pray براي ---- دبوس pin بين "الباء مشددة"
ينهق bray براي ---- سلة bin بين "الباء المخففة"

قواعد نطق الحرف Q & R

■ كيفية نطق الحروف الانجليزية (Q-R)

● كيفية نطق الحرف Q

ينطق حرف Q كما ينطق حرف الـ كاف في اللغة العربية

حرف (q) يكون دائماً متبوعاً بحرف (u) .

ملكة — Queen — كوين

تماماً — Quite — كوايت

زلزال — Quake — كويك

● كيفية نطق الحرف R

ينطق حرف R كما ينطق حرف الـ راء في اللغة العربية

خاتم — Ring — رينج

أرز — Rice — رايز

يقرأ — Read — ريد

S قواعد نطق الحرف

● ينطق حرف S كما ينطق حرف الـ سين في اللغة العربية

منزل _____ house _____ هاوبس

يري _____ See _____ سي

آمن _____ Safe _____ سيف

● ينطق حرف S كما ينطق حرف الـ سين (سس) في اللغة العربية في حالة اضافته

في نهاية فعل أو الجمع بعد الحروف p,t,k,f,th

يتوقف _____ stops _____ ستوبسس

يريد _____ wants _____ وانتسيس

شهور _____ months _____ مانسس

يكسر _____ breaks _____ بريكسس

براهين _____ proofs _____ برووفسس

● لا ينطق الحرف (s) في بعض الكلمات إذا جاء بعد (i) وتلاه الحرف (l) مثل:

جزيرة _____ Isle _____ أيل

الغزل _____ Lisle _____ لايل

● ينطق الحرف (s) كحرف (z) إذا وقع بين حرفين علة أمثلة:

بسهولة _____ Easily _____ أيزلي

الحاضر _____ Present _____ بيزنت

تأشيرة _____ Visa _____ فيزا

● ينطق الحرف (s) كحرف (z) أيضا في حالة الجمع بعد حروف g,y,s,b,n,m,r

أولاد _____ boys _____ بوير

شنت _____ bags _____ باجر

أتوبيسات _____ buses _____ باسير

نجوم _____ stars _____ ستارز

غرف _____ rooms _____ رومز

أقلام جاف _____ pens _____ بنز

قواعد نطق الحرف T

ينطق حرف **T** كما ينطق حرف التاء في اللغة العربية

T

عشرة — Ten — تِن

نسبة — Rate — رِيت

قطعة — Cat — كِت

لا يلفظ هذا الحرف إذا جاء بعد (s) وكان قبلهما حرفاً صوتياً أمثلة:

يربط — Fasten — فاسِن

نشاط — Bustle — بَسِل

استمع — Listen — لِسِن

t

لا يلفظ في بعض الكلمات إذا جاء بعد (f) ووقع قبلهما الحرف (o) وبعدهما الحرف (e) أمثلة:

في أغلب الأحيان — Often — أْفِن

ينخفض — Soften — صُفِن

قواعد نطق الحرف U

• إذا جاء حرف (u) في الكلمة ينطق كالفتحة تماماً مثل:

لكن — But — بُت

مزاح — Fun — فن

كوخ — Hut — هُت

يشذ عن هذه القاعدة بعض الكلمات مثل:

يضع — Put — بُت

مملوء — Full — قُل

• إذا جاء حرف (o) قبل حرف (u) فيلفظان (أو) مثل:

صوت — Sound — ساوند

أرض — Ground — جراوند

مربوط — Bound — باوند

• ينطق الحرف (u) كما هو في الحروف الهجائية (يو) إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف (e) أمثلة:

ذكي، بارع — Cute — كيوت

الدوق — Duke — دُوك

بغل — Mule — ميول

و لهذه القاعدة شواذ: قاضي — Judge — جُدج



قواعد نطق الحرف V & W

■ كيفية نطق الحرف V

- ينطق حرف V كما ينطق ال فاء المخففة في اللغة العربية

سيارة فان - VAN — فان يعطي — GIVE — جيف
جدا — VERY — فيري يسوق — DRIVE — درايف



■ كيفية نطق الحرف W

- ينطق حرف W كما ينطق ال واو في اللغة العربية

ماء — WATER — ووتر

كان — WAS — ووز

نافذة — WINDOW — ويندو



لا يلفظ هذا الحرف W إذا جاء قبل حرف (r) مثل:

ملتوي — Wry — رأي

يكتب — Write — رأيت

خطأ — Wrong — رونغ

أحيانا لا يلفظ هذا الحرف W إذا جاء بعده حرف (H) مثل :

من — WHO — هو

من-الذي — WHOME — هوم

قواعد نطق الحرف X

حرف X له ثلاث طرق في القراءة

* الطريقة الاولى (اكس) كما في كلمة BOX

صندوق _____ BOX _____ بوكس
ضريبة _____ TAX _____ ناكس
بصلح _____ FIX _____ فيكس
أشعة X _____ X-RAY _____ اكس-راي

* الطريقة الثانية (ج + ر) كما في كلمة ANXIETY

قلق _____ ANXIETY _____ انجريتني
بالطبط _____ EXACTLY _____ اجراكتلي
مثال _____ EXAMPLE _____ اجراميل
فاخر _____ LUXURIOUS _____ لخرورياس

* الطريقة الثالثة (ر) كما في كلمة XEROX

يصور _____ XEROX _____ زيروكس
غاز الرينون _____ XENON _____ رينون
النقش ع الخشب _____ XYLOGRAPHY _____ رالوجرافي

قواعد نطق الحرف Y

حرف Y له أربع طرق في القراءة

الطريقة الاولى :-

ينطق حرف Y كما ينطق حرف الياء اذا جاء بعده أحد حروف العلة (a-e-i-o-u)

نعم _____ yes _____ ياس

لك _____ your _____ يور

باردة _____ yard _____ بارد

اليمن _____ yemen _____ يمن

الطريقة الثانية :-

ينطق حرف Y كما ينطق حرف I "أي" خاصة اذا جاء في اخر الكلمة

يطير _____ fly _____ فلاي

سماء _____ sky _____ سكاى

لى _____ my _____ ماي

خجول _____ shy _____ شاي

الطريقة الثالثة :-

ينطق حرف Y كما ينطق حرف E "إي"

يذاكر _____ study _____ ستادي

أي _____ any _____ إني

جامعة _____ university _____ يونيفيرستى

تعاطف _____ sympathy _____ سيمباني

الطريقة الرابعة :-

ينطق حرف Y كما ينطق حرف A "أي" اذا جاء في اخر الكلمة |

يلعب _____ play _____ بلاي

يقول _____ say _____ ساى

يوم _____ day _____ داى

مايو _____ may _____ ماي

قواعد نطق الحرف Z

ينطق حرف ال Z كما ينطق حرف ال ر في اللغة العربية

Z

حديقة حيوان ZOO — زوو
مقاس ZEBRA — زبرا
صفر ZERO — زيرو
شعلة BLAZE — بيلبر

براجاء مراجعة السلسلة ثم محاولة قراءة الكلمات التالية

Z

CELL
BALL
SHY
KNIFE
CAR
CARE
HOW
WHO
XEROX
HONOR
PARK
BARK
ENOUGH

بهذا تنتهي الدروس الخاصة بكيفية نطق الحروف

First Lesson 1 : Parts of speech and Definite & Indefinite Articles

1-PARTS OF SPEECH:

Ways to translate from english language to Arabic language IN
COPYBOOK

Pronoun	Verbs	Nouns	Adjective	Adverb	Prepositions
I	Go	Book	Fast	Fastly	Under
You	Work	School	Beautiful	Slowly	On
She	Learn	Teacher	Strong	Smartly	To
He	Read	Building	Easy	Strongly	In
It	Study	Father	Hard	Quickly	Above
	Listen	Mother	Smart	Hardly	Next
We	Cook	Car	Stupid	Badly	By
You	Use	House	Tall	Deeply	Behind
They	Like	Door	Bad	Shortly	Beside

Pronouns

I – you – he – she – it – we – they – me – him – her – us – them – mine – our – etc

Nouns

Camel – house – train – car – Jamal – Naima – school – machine – song – sport –
pencil – bag
– cabbage – onion – cup – etc

Verbs

Come – sing – write – read – have – be – walk – swim – hit – begin – cook – speak
– like – play – eat – drink – watch – smile – dream – sleep – travel – tie – clean –
stay – get – see – start
– work – want – etc

Adjectives

Tall – long – beautiful – ugly – short – nice – slim – fat – big – wonderful –
exciting – new – old – narrow – wide – small – interesting – boring – funny –
colourful – important – sunny – cloudy – snowy – windy – hot – cold – warm – etc

Adverbs

Well – slowly – very – quite – always – usually often – seldom – quickly – rarely –
sometimes
– early – now – never – finally – badly – soon – today – tomorrow – etc

Prepositions

In – on – under – over – between – next to – in front of – off – of – by – with –
without – behind – above – beside – below – out of – through – towards – into –
along – around/ round – down – about

2- The indefinite articles are : A and AN

We use **A** before a consonant-sound

We use **AN** before a vowel-sound

The difference depends on the sound of the vowels and consonants, not the spelling

ENGLISH
GRAMMAR

A - AN

Woodward®
ENGLISH
ENGLISH

The difference between A and AN

A and **AN** have the same meaning. **A** and **AN** are indefinite articles. The difference depends on the sound at the beginning of the next word.

When the next word starts with a
CONSONANT SOUND

A

a book

a frog

a car

a lemon

a dog

a truck

When the next word starts with a
VOWEL SOUND

AN

an apple

an orange

an egg

an umbrella

an insect

an actor

BE CAREFUL! The **SOUND** of the letter is important

a house

BUT

an hour

The **H** at the beginning of **hour** is **silent**.

an uncle

BUT

a university

The **U** at the beginning of **university** sounds like **YOU**.

This rule applies to all words after **A** or **AN** (including adjectives, adverbs...)

a cold day

an easy lesson

a very crazy person

an interesting class

www.grammar.cl

www.woodwardenglish.com

www.vocabulary.cl

Examples:

a teacher a
 peach a
 woman a
 house a man
 a useful book a
 university a
 European
 an English teacher an
 orange
 an old woman an
 hour
 a house
 an honest man an
 heir
 an honour an
 Irish person

***** Don't put

A or AN before uncountable nouns)

I don't like milk.
 Silence is golden.
 (We're having soup for lunch

DEFINITE ARTICLE (the)

USE	EXAMPLE	NOTES
with adjectives, to refer to a whole group of people (as plural nouns), families, nationalities ending in – sh, -ch, -ese	the Japanese, the English, the Dutch, the Greens, the old, the poor, the rich	Other plural nationalities are used with or without “ the” The Greeks, the Italians, Latvians (the Latvians)
With the words: beach, cinema, country (side), ground, jungle, radio, sea, seaside, theatre, world, station, shop, pub, library	He likes going to the theatre. She went to the station to meet Jim.	We often say “ television” without “ the” . We often watch television . But! Turn on the television (set) .
Before “ most” (as a superlative)	She is the most beautiful girl.	Don't use “ the” if “ most” is as a determiner followed by a noun. Most people believe he is a liar.
Morning, afternoon, evening	I'll be at home in the evening.	But don't use with: at night , at noon , at midnight , at 4 o'clock , by day/ night
Historical references/events	The Renaissance, the Middle Ages, the First World War	But: World War I

DEFINITE ARTICLE (the)

USE	EXAMPLE
With the names of: rivers, seas, groups of islands/ states, mountain ranges, deserts, oceans, canals, directions (debespuses)	The Daugava, the Black Sea, The Bahamas, the USA, the Alps, the sahara desert, the Atlantic, the north/south, east/ west
The names or nouns with " of"	The Tower of London, the statue of Liberty
Musical instruments, dances	The piano, the tango
With the titles	The Queen, the Prince, (but not with Queen Victoria)
With the names of: Cinemas, theatres, hotels, museums, newspapers/magazines, ships	The Rex, the Sheraton, the Prado, the Guardian
with decades, or groups of years	she grew up in the seventies

Exercises

put 'a' or 'an' where necessary

..... boy.
 teacher.
hour.
island.
 English teacher.
 peach.
old man.
 year.
university.
 pen.
apple.
 doctor.
aunt.
 uncle.
 tree.
ice-cream.
 habit.
student
test.
 Arabic book

GOOD LUCK

Second lesson 2: the simple present of verb to be Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1- *Positive*

1- With pronoun

Pronoun + verb to be + noun

I.....am..... a doctor

You.....are.....a doctor

He.....is.....a doctor

She.....is.....a doctor

It.....is.....a doctor

We.....are.....doctors

You.....are.....doctors

They.....are.....doctors

2- With subject

Pronoun subject + verb to be + noun

I.....am.....a doctor

You.....are.....a doctor

Ahmed.....is..... a doctor

Aichais.....a doctor

Buildingis..... a hospital

We.....are.....doctors

You.....are.....doctors

Ahmed and Aicha.....are..... doctors

Present Simple 'Be' Positive

Exercises

Put in am / is / are.

1. She _____ a teacher.
2. We _____ hungry.
3. Luke _____ late.
4. They _____ Spanish.
5. You _____ happy.
6. I _____ thirsty.
7. It _____ cold.
8. She _____ German.
9. He _____ early.
10. We _____ tired.
11. You _____ beautiful.
12. I _____ hot.
13. I _____ from London.
14. You _____ a doctor.
15. Emily _____ my sister.
16. He _____ in the garden.
17. They _____ on the bus.
18. We _____ friends.
19. I _____ 25 years old.
20. She _____ sick.

Present Simple 'Be' Positive

Answers

1. She is a teacher.
2. We are hungry.
3. Luke is late.
4. They are Spanish.
5. You are happy.
6. I am thirsty.
7. It is cold.
8. She is German.
9. He is early.
10. We are tired.
11. You are beautiful.
12. I am hot.
13. I am from London.
14. You are a doctor.
15. Emily is my sister.
16. He is in the garden.
17. They are on the bus.
18. We are friends.
19. I am 25 years old.
20. She is sick.

2- *Negative*

Pronoun + verb to be+negative "not" + noun

I.....am.....not.....a doctor
You.....are.....not....a doctor
He.....is.....not....a doctor
She.....is.....not.....a doctor
It.....is.....not.....a hospital
We.....are.....not....doctors
You.....are.....not.....doctors
They.....are....not.....doctors

Sentence with adjective

Pronoun + verb to be+negative "not" + adjective+ noun

I.....am.....not..... a good doctor
You.....are.....not....a good doctor
He.....is.....not....a good doctor
She.....is.....not.....a good doctor
It.....is.....not..... a good hospital
We.....are.....not.... good doctors
You.....are.....not..... good doctors
They.....are....not..... good doctors

Present Simple 'Be' Negative

Exercises

Make the negative with 'be'.

1. I _____ cold.
2. She _____ French.
3. You _____ an accountant.
4. John _____ my brother.
5. They _____ from Berlin.
6. We _____ late.
7. It _____ warm outside.
8. I _____ hungry.
9. Ian and Jill _____ on the bus.
10. She _____ Spanish.
11. He _____ in the bathroom.
12. We _____ thirsty.
13. It _____ sunny.
14. You _____ a teacher.
15. They _____ at school.
16. Lucy _____ from Australia.
17. I _____ a nurse.
18. He _____ sleepy.
19. We _____ at home.
20. You _____ from China.

Present Simple 'Be' Negative

Answers

(Of course, you can write 'are not' instead of 'aren't' etc.)

1. I'm not cold.
2. She isn't French.
3. You aren't an accountant.
4. John isn't my brother.
5. They aren't from Berlin.
6. We aren't late.
7. It isn't warm outside.
8. I'm not hungry.
9. Ian and Jill aren't on the bus.
10. She isn't Spanish.
11. He isn't in the bathroom.
12. We aren't thirsty.
13. It isn't sunny.
14. You aren't a teacher.
15. They aren't at school.
16. Lucy isn't from Australia.
17. I'm not a nurse.
18. He isn't sleepy.
19. We aren't at home.
20. You aren't from China.

3- *Interrogation*

verb to be+ pronoun + noun ?

am.....i.....doctor?

Yes you are /

no you are not

are...you.....doctor?

Yes i am /

no i am not

is.....he..... .doctor?

Yes he is /

no he is not

is.....she.....doctor?

Yes she is /

no she is not

is.....it.....hospital?

Yes it is /

no it is not

are....we.....doctors?

Yes you are /

no you are not

are.....you....doctors?

Yes we are /

no we are not

are.....they....doctors?

Yes they are /

no they are not

Present Simple 'Yes / No' Questions with 'Be' interrogation

Make a question with 'be'.

1. John / in the garden?

2. They / hungry?

3. We / late?

4. You / tired?

5. He / French?

6. She / a teacher?

7. Harry and Lucy / from London?

8. I / early?

9. You / thirsty?

10. She / on the bus?

11. We / on time?

12. Pedro / from Spain?

13. They / in Tokyo?

14. Julie / at home?

15. The children / at school?

16. You / in a cafe?

17. I / right?

18. We / in the right place?

19. She / German?

20. He / a doctor?

Present Simple 'Yes / No' Questions with 'Be' interrogation

Answers

1. Is John in the garden?
2. Are they hungry?
3. Are we late?
4. Are you tired?
5. Is he French?
6. Is she a teacher?
7. Are Harry and Lucy from London?
8. Am I early?
9. Are you thirsty?
10. Is she on the bus?
11. Are we on time?
12. Is Pedro from Spain?
13. Are they in Tokyo?
14. Is Julie at home?
15. Are the children at school?
16. Are you in a cafe?
17. Am I right?
18. Are we in the right place?
19. Is she German?
20. Is he a doctor?

Third lesson 3 : The simple present of all verbs : Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1- Positive

In this lesson, I will tackle the simple present tense of all verbs (I have already mentioned the present simple of the verb to be in my second lesson).

How to form the simple present tense?

Case 1 : / There are only two basic forms for the simple present tense; one ends with -s and the other doesn't. Here are the rules, using the example of the verb to eat

I **eat** (simple form)

You **eat** (simple form)

He **eats** (simple form + s)

She **eats** (simple form + s)

It **eats** (simple form + s)

We **eat** (simple form)

You **eat** (simple form)

They **eat** (simple form)

IMPORTANT: Only THIRD PERSON SINGULAR subjects (he, she, it) must have a verb with an "s" at the end.

Case 2: Verbs ending with "z", "sh", "ch", "ss", "x" and "o" "e" must take an -es at the third person singular.

1 *to go*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....go.....to company
You.....go.....to company
He.....goes.....to company
She.....goes.....to company
It.....goes.....to company
We.....go.....to company
You.....go.....to company
They.....go.....to company

2 *to pass*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....pass.....exam
You.....pass.....exam
He.....passes.....exam
She.....passes.....exam
It.....passes.....exam
We.....pass.....exam
You.....pass.....exam
They.....pass.....exam

3 *to watch*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....watch.....football
You.....watch.....football
He.....watches.....football
She.....watches.....football
It.....watches.....football
We.....watch.....football
You.....watch.....football
They.....watch.....football

4 *to wish*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....wish.....to go to USA
You.....wish.....to go to USA
He.....wishes..to go to USA
She.....wishes..to go to USA
It.....wishes..to go to USA
We.....wish.....to go to USA
You.....wish.....to go to USA
They.....wish.....to go to USA

5 *to fix*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....fix.....phone
You.....fix.....phone
He.....fixes.....phone
She.....fixes.....phone
It.....fixes.....phone
We.....fix.....phone
You.....fix.....phone
They.....fix.....phone

6 *to buzz*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....buzz.....in youtube
You.....buzz.....in youtube
He.....buzzes.....in YouTube
She.....buzzes.....in YouTube
It.....buzzes.....in YouTube
We.....buzz.....in YouTube
You.....buzz.....in YouTube
They.....buzz.....in YouTube

7 *to care*

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....care..... family

You.....care..... family

He.....cares..... family

She.....cares.....family

It.....cares.....family

We.....care.....family

You.....care.....family

They.....care.....family

Case 3 : Verbs ending with a consonant +y : you must change y to i and add 'es'.

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....carry.....responsible house

You.....carry.....responsible house

He.....carries.....responsible house

She.....carries.....responsible house

It.....carries.....responsible house

We.....carry.....responsible house

You.....carry.....responsible house

They.....carry.....responsible house

It flies (verb to fly)

He studies (verb to study)

She carries (verb to carry)

Case 4: The simple present of the verb 'To Have':

The Simple Present of the verb to have is slightly irregular, since the bare infinitive is have, where as the form of the verb used in the third person singular is has. The Simple Present of the verb to have is conjugated as follows:

to have

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....have.....responsible house

You.....have.....responsible house

He.....has.....responsible house

She.....has.....responsible house

It.....has.....responsible house

We.....have.....responsible house

You.....have.....responsible house

They.....have.....responsible house

Present Simple Positive with other verbs 1

Make positive present simple sentences.

1. (he / go to school every day)

2. (I / like swimming)

3. (you / play badminton on Saturdays)

4. (the class / begin at 9am)

5. (they / sometimes go to the cinema)

6. (she / love chocolate)

7. (we / study French)

8. (they / live in London)

9. (he / work in a restaurant)

10. (Lucy / play the guitar)

11. (we / cook every day)

12. (he / clean the house at the weekends)

13. (I / like reading detective stories)

14. (you / come from France)

15. (John and David / often go to restaurants)

16. (Susie / study English every night)

17. (the train / leave at 6pm)

18. (we / go to the park on Sundays)

19. (he / likes taking photographs)

20. (the moon / go round the earth)

Present Simple Positive with other verbs 1

Answers

- 1. He goes to school every day.**
- 2. I like swimming.**
- 3. You play badminton on Saturdays.**
- 4. The class begins at 9am**
- 5. They sometimes go to the cinema.**
- 6. She loves chocolate.**
- 7. We study French.**
- 8. They live in London.**
- 9. He works in a restaurant.**
- 10. Lucy plays the guitar.**
- 11. We cook every day.**
- 12. He cleans the house at the weekends.**
- 13. I like reading detective stories.**
- 14. You come from France.**
- 15. John and David often go to restaurants.**
- 16. Susie studies English every night.**
- 17. The train leaves at 6pm.**
- 18. We go to the park on Sundays.**
- 19. He likes taking photographs.**
- 20. The moon goes round the earth.**

Present Simple Other Verbs Positive Exercise 2

Make positive present simple sentences:

1. (we / often watch TV)

2. (I / hate mushrooms)

3. (she / visit her grandmother every Christmas)

4. (they / use the Internet every evening)

5. (you / often go swimming)

6. (John / hate waiting for the bus)

7. (Lucy and Jill / want to go out tonight)

8. (I / usually stay at home on Fridays)

9. (he / love driving fast cars)

10. (they / often have parties)

11. (she / take a piano lesson every Monday)

12. (we / like watching French films)

13. (you / go to bed very early)

14. (I / always eat breakfast)

15. (they / often arrive late)

16. (he / live in Beijing)

17. (David / work in a school)

18. (she / read a lot of novels)

19. (the Queen / like her dogs)

20. (I / cook almost every night)

Present Simple Other Verbs Positive Exercise 2

Answers

- 1. We often watch TV.**
- 2. I hate mushrooms.**
- 3. She visits her grandmother every Christmas.**
- 4. They use the Internet every evening.**
- 5. You often go swimming.**
- 6. John hates waiting for the bus.**
- 7. Lucy and Jill want to go out tonight.**
- 8. I usually stay at home on Fridays.**
- 9. He loves driving fast cars.**
- 10. They often have parties.**
- 11. She takes a piano lesson every Monday.**
- 12. We like watching French films.**
- 13. You go to bed very early.**
- 14. I always eat breakfast.**
- 15. They often arrive late.**
- 16. He lives in Beijing.**
- 17. David works in a school.**
- 18. She reads a lot of novels.**
- 19. The Queen likes her dogs.**
- 20. I cook almost every night.**

2- *Negative* :

do not/does not

to have

Pronoun + negative + verb to do + object

I.....*do not*.....have...responsible house

You...*do not*.....have..responsible house

He.....*does not*....have..responsible house

She...*does not*...have...responsible house

It.....*does not*...have...responsible house

We....*do not*.....have...responsible house

You...*do not*.....have..responsible house

They..*do not*.....have...responsible house

Present Simple Negative with other verbs

Make negative present simple sentences.

1. (I / not / like coffee)

2. (I / not / live in Paris)

3. (she / not / come from Spain)

4. (John / not / work in a bank)

5. (they / not / get up at eight o'clock)

6. (we / not / go to the cinema every Friday)

7. (you / not / read the newspaper every day)

8. (he / not / go to school in France)

9. (we / not / watch TV in the evening)

10. (I / not / have a shower in the morning)

11. (she / not / drink tea every afternoon)

12. (they / not / visit their parents at the weekend)

13. (you / not / study English very often)

14. (it / not / rain here in the summer)

15. (we / not / go out on Tuesday nights)

16. (he / not / like cabbage)

17. (the sun / not / go round the earth)

18. (she / not / play the piano)

19. (I / not / smoke)

20. (Julie and Lucy / not / play football)

Present Simple Negative with other verbs 1

Answers

- 1. I don't like coffee.**
- 2. I don't live in Paris.**
- 3. She doesn't come from Spain.**
- 4. John doesn't work in a bank.**
- 5. They don't get up at eight o'clock.**
- 6. We don't go to the cinema every Friday.**
- 7. You don't read the newspaper every day.**
- 8. He doesn't go to school in France.**
- 9. We don't watch TV in the evening.**
- 10. I don't have a shower in the morning.**
- 11. She doesn't drink tea every afternoon.**
- 12. They don't visit their parents at the weekend.**
- 13. You don't study English very often.**
- 14. It doesn't rain here in the summer.**
- 15. We don't go out on Tuesday nights.**
- 16. He doesn't like cabbage.**
- 17. The sun doesn't go round the earth.**
- 18. She doesn't play the piano.**
- 19. I don't smoke.**

20. Julie and Lucy don't play football.

Present Simple Negative Other Verbs Exercise 2

Make the negative present simple.

1. (he / not / enjoy jazz)

2. (we / not / buy many clothes)

3. (she / not / like studying)

4. (you / not / love me)

5. (they / not / work at home)

6. (Lucy / not / have a computer)

7. (I / not / take the bus at night)

8. (David / not / travel much)

9. (we / not / have any children)

10. (you / not / study Biology)

11. (Julie / not / listen to much music)

12. (they / not / live close to our house)

13. (she / not / work abroad)

14. (you / not / own a bicycle)

15. (I / not / get up early)

16. (they / not / have a car)

17. (he / not / come home late)

18. (I / not / like travelling by plane)

19. (you / not / come from Africa)

20. (She / not / have any brothers or sisters)

Present Simple Negative Other Verbs Exercise 2

Answers

1. He doesn't enjoy jazz.
2. We don't buy many clothes.
3. She doesn't like studying.
4. You don't love me.
5. They don't work at home.
6. Lucy doesn't have a computer.
7. I don't take the bus at night.
8. David doesn't travel much.
9. We don't have any children.
10. You don't study Biology.
11. Julie doesn't listen to much music.
12. They don't live close to our house.
13. She doesn't work abroad.
14. You don't own a bicycle.
15. I don't get up early.
16. They don't have a car.
17. He doesn't come home late.
18. I don't like travelling by plane.
19. You don't come from Africa.
20. She doesn't have any brothers or sisters.

3- Interrogation* :

to have

Do / does + Pronoun + verb to do infinitive + object ?

1- Do I have money ?

Yes you do

No you do not

2- do you have money?

Yes i do

No you do not

3- does he have money ?

Yes he does

No he does not

4- does she have money ?

Yes she does

No she does not

5- does it have money ?

Yes it does

No it does not

6- do we have money ?

Yes you do

No you do not

7- do you have money ?

Yes we do

No we do not

8- do they have money ?

Yes they do

No they do not

REVIEWS : *Subject pronoun:*

Subject ضمير الانسان

Pronoun ..*verb*..*object*

Hegoes.....to school

Mohamed..goes.... to school

Subject ضمير انسان

Pronoun ..*verb*..*object*

Shegoes.....to school

samira.....goes.... to school

Subject ضمير جماد

Pronoun ..*verb*..*object*

itgoes.....to school

bus..... goes.....to school

Subject ضمير حيوان

Pronoun ..*verb*..*object*

itplays.....by ball

cat.....plays.....by ball

ضمير جمع يجمع بين حيوان وجماد و انسان

Subject

Pronoun ...*verb*..*object*

theytravel...by car

*Mohammed and samira and

cat*.....travel...by car

Present Simple in Interrogation

Make present simple questions.

1. (you / like cake?)

2. (she / live in London?)

3. (they / hate studying?)

4. (you / drink tea every morning?)

5. (you smoke?)

6. (he / play tennis on Saturdays?)

7. (you / go shopping at the weekend?)

8. (you / drink alcohol?)

9. (she / work in an office?)

10. (they / study French?)

11. (you / meet your friends on Fridays?)

12. (you / read a lot?)

13. (John / come from New Zealand?)

14. (they / like pizza?)

15. (we / arrive at 9 pm?)

16. (it / snow here in winter?)

17. (Lucy / study History?)

18. (I / work as a teacher?)

19. (he / eat rice often?)

20. (you / like coffee?)

Present Simple in Interrogation

Make present simple questions.

Answers

1. Do you like cake?
2. Does she live in London?
3. Do they hate studying?
4. Do you drink tea every morning?
5. Do you smoke?
6. Does he play tennis on Saturdays?
7. Do you go shopping at the weekend?
8. Do you drink alcohol?
9. Does she work in an office?
10. Do they study French?
11. Do you meet your friends on Fridays?
12. Do you read a lot?
13. Does John come from New Zealand?
14. Do they like pizza?
15. Do we arrive at 9pm?
16. Does it snow here in winter?
17. Does Lucy study History?
18. Do I work as a teacher?
19. Does he eat rice often?
20. Do you like coffee?

Fourth lesson 4: Possessive

1. Object pronoun

I talk you

I talk him

I talk her

I talk it

I talk you

I talk them

.....

You talk me

You talk him

You talk her

You talk it

You talk us

You talk them

.....

He talk me

He talk you

He talks him

He talks her

He talks it

He talk us

He talk you

He talk them

SHe talk me

SHe talk you

SHe talks him

SHe talks her

SHe talks it

SHe talk us

SHe talk you

SHe talk them

.....

It talk me

It talk you

It talks him

It talks her

It talks it

It talk us

It talk you

It talk them

We talk you

We talk him

We talk her

We talk it

We talk you

We talk them

.....

They talk me

They talk you

They talk him

They talk her

They talk it

They talk us

They talk you

They talk them

Object Pronouns

Subject to Object Pronouns

I	→	me
You	→	you
He	→	him
She	→	her
It	→	it
They	→	them



Choose the correct pronoun.

1. Stop talking and listen to I / me.
2. Miss Suzette teaches English to they / them.
3. Dad took us / we to the desert.
4. Give I / me the pencil please.
5. Where did you meet she / her?
6. I left he / him at the beach.
7. This test is easy for us / we.

Fill in the blanks with the correct object pronoun.

1. Fahad knows that man. He met _____ at work placement.
2. The book is on my table. Please bring _____ to _____.
3. Ali told his sister that he would miss _____ when she goes away on holiday with her friends.
4. We can't walk to school, so Sultan is taking _____ by car.
5. They took their phones with _____ into class.
6. Can I visit _____ at your home tomorrow?
7. He likes to read. I am going to give _____ a book.
8. Oranges are on the table. Don't eat _____!
9. My brother lives in Dubai. I often visit _____.
10. Look at _____. She is funny.

Choose the correct option:

1. I can't see find Falima. I can't find
2. Saeed is next to Rashed. Saeed is next to
3. Can you help Obaid and Saif? Can you help
4. Drink your coffee! Drink
5. We are going to the movies. Come with
6. These are my oranges. You can't eat
7. Mohammed is at school. He can't come with
8. The cat is under the tree. Can you see
9. Abdulla can't swim. Help
10. It's Mary's birthday today. This is a present for
11. Where are you? I can't see
12. The windows are open. Please close
13. I can't ride a horse. Help

 ENGLISH PRONOUNS					
	Subject Pronouns	Object Pronouns	Possessive Adjectives	Possessive Pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns
1st person	I	me	my	mine	myself
2nd person	you	you	your	yours	yourself
3rd person (male)	he	him	his	his	himself
3rd person (female)	she	her	her	hers	herself
3rd thing	it	it	its	(not used)	itself
1st person (Plural)	we	us	our	ours	ourselves
2nd person (Plural)	you	you	your	yours	yourselves
3rd person and thing (Plural)	they	them	their	theirs	themselves

2. Possessive adjectives

I have my money
You have my money
He has my money
She has my money
It has my money
They have my money

.....

I have your money
You have your money
He has your money
She has your money
It has your money
We have your money
They have your money

I have his money
You have his money
He has his money
She has his money
It has his money
We have his money
They have his money

.....

I have her money
You have her money
He has her money
She has her money
It has her money
We have her money
They have her money
.....

I have its money
You have its money
He has its money

She has its money
It has its money
We have its money
They have its money
.....
You have our money
He has our money
She has our money
It has our money
We have our money
They have our money
.....
I have their money
You have their money
He has their money
She has their money
It has their money
We have their money
They have their money

P. A

Exercise

1. *The boy* likes _____ school.
2. *Mary* sees _____ mother every day.
3. *My teachers* bring _____ children to our place on Saturdays.
4. *The cat* eats _____ food quickly.
5. *I* often forget _____ key.
6. *You* write in _____ book in class.
7. *We* bring _____ pencils to class.
8. *The men* always bring _____ wives to the party.
9. *Mr Adams* teaches _____ class in the morning.
10. *She* likes to give presents to _____ grandchildren.
11. *They* never do _____ homework.
12. *Ali* sometimes wear _____ green t-shirt.
13. *We* love _____ school.
14. *Ayşe and Ahmet* play with _____ sisters.
15. *You* always wear _____ uniform at school.
16. *I* rarely walk to _____ school.
17. *We* eat _____ lunch at 12 a.m.
18. *The bird* always sleeps in _____ nest.
19. *She* always forget _____ books in the cupboard.
20. *He* often speaks to _____ friends.
21. *They* close _____ books.

3. Pronoun possessive

SINGULAR

This car is mine

This car is yours

This car is his

This car is hers

This car is its

This car is ours

This car is theirs

Plural

These cars are mine

These cars are yours

These cars are his

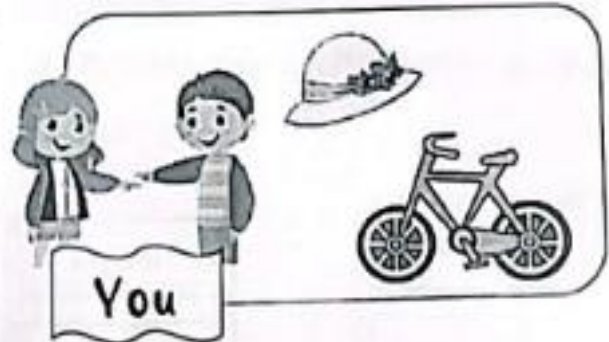
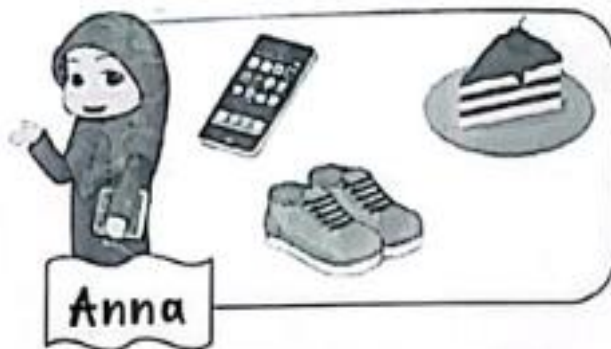
These cars are hers

These cars are its

These cars are ours

These cars are theirs

Possessive Pronouns



Choose the correct possessive pronoun based on the pictures above.

1. The cake is .
2. The water bottles are .
3. The tent is .
4. The hat is .
5. The phone is .
6. The book is .
7. The badminton racquets are .
8. The shoes are .
9. The bicycle is .
10. The ball is .

4. Pronoun reflexive

I support myself

You support yourself

He supports himself

She supports herself

It supports itself

We support ourselves

You support yourselves

They support themselves



Reflexive Pronouns are used to refer back to the subject of a sentence. They should match the subject. The reflexive pronouns always end in - self or - selves.

Write the correct reflexive pronoun that makes the statement correct. You can use reflexive pronouns in the box twice.

herself
himself

ourselves
themselves

myself
yourself

Itself
yourselves

1. I saw _____ in the mirror.
2. The dog ran _____ into the fence.
3. Did you make this _____?
4. We hurt _____ at the beach.
5. The soldiers pulled _____ up the wall.
6. Abang bought _____ an ice-cream.
7. My sister made _____ a new skirt.
8. Children! Please help _____ to the food.
9. The monkey swings _____ from tree to tree.
10. I patted _____ for a job well done.



Reflexive Pronouns



Drag the correct reflexive pronoun that makes the statement correct.

themselves

itself

yourself

myself

himself

yourselves

ourselves

herself

- 1- I told to always give all my effort.
- 2- We gave a pat on the back for the good work.
- 3- Please calm down.
- 4- He took out of the ball game.
- 5- She whispered to when she was alone.
- 6- They gave a twenty minute break.
- 7- You guys gave a more difficult task.
- 8- The dog ran into the fence.

5-Possessive adjective in question:

Q: what is your name?

A: my name is houssam

Q: what is your name's company?

A: my name's company is fast Commerce

Q: what is your favorite food?

A: my favorite food is bastila

Q: what do you have in your car ?

A: i have my family in my car.

Q: what is your type of clothes do you wear ?

A: my type of clothes is modern i wear.

6-Possessive pronouns in Questions

Different between *possessive adjectives* and *possessive pronouns* in question sentence

1. Answer by Possessive pronouns

SINGULAR

Possessive pronouns

Q: Whose phone is this ?

A: this phone is yours.

Plural

Q: whose cars are these?

A: these cars are mine.

*Questions in his and hers and its and theirs. * possessive pronouns

Q: whose book is this?

A: this book is hers.

Q: who is she ? صفة

A: she is your friend.

Q: What is her name? اسم

A: her name is sara

2. Answer by Possessive adjectives

SINGULAR

Q: whose pen is this ?

A: this is my pen.

Plural

Q: whose houses are these ?

A: these are your houses.

*Questions in his and her and its and their. * possessive adjectives

Q: whose picture is this?

A: this is her picture.

Q: who is she? صفة

A: she is your coworker.

Q: what is her name? اسم

A: her name is asmae

Exercise QCM

1. Whose watch is this?

- It's hers watch.
- It's her.
- It's she's.
- It's hers.

2. Whose pen is this?

- It's my.
- It's mine pen.
- It's mine.
- It's mines.

3. Whose bottle of water is that?

- It's her.
- It's she's.
- It's hers.
- It's hers bottle.

4. Whose MP3 player do you borrow?

- His.
- Her.
- Their.
- My.

5. Whose car do you take?

- We take theirs car.
- We take their.
- We take their car.
- Their.

6. Whose jacket is that?

- It's her jacket.
- It's hers jacket.
- It's her.
- It's she.

7. Is this yours?

- Yes, it's my.
- Yes, it's I.
- Yes, it's mine.
- Yes, it's mine thing.

8. What do you borrow?

- I borrow he's eraser.
- I borrow his eraser.
- I borrow he eraser.
- I borrow eraser from he.

9. What do you do after the party?

- We sleep at theirs house.
- We sleep at theirs.
- We sleep at their house.
- We sleep at they house.

10. This apartment belongs to us.

- It's us apartment.
- It's our.
- It's our apartment.
- It's ours apartment.

1. Whose watch is this?

- It's hers watch.
- It's her.
- It's she's.
- **It's hers.**

2. Whose pen is this?

- It's my.
- It's mine pen.
- **It's mine.**
- It's mines.

3. Whose bottle of water is that?

- It's her.
- It's she's.
- **It's hers.**
- It's hers bottle.

4. Whose MP3 player did you borrow?

- **His.**
- Her.
- Their.
- My.

5. Whose car did you take?

- We took theirs car.
- We took their.
- **We took their car.**
- Their.

6. Whose jacket is that?

- **It's her jacket.**
- It's hers jacket.
- It's her.
- It's she.

7. Is this yours?

- Yes, it's my.
- Yes, it's I.
- **Yes, it's mine.**
- Yes, it's mine thing.

8. What did you borrow?

- I borrowed he's eraser.
- **I borrowed his eraser.**
- I borrowed he eraser.
- I borrowed eraser from he.

9. What did you do after the party?

- We slept at theirs house.
- We slept at theirs.
- **We slept at their house.**
- We slept at they house.

10. This apartment belongs to us.

- It's us apartment.
- It's our.
- **It's our apartment.**
- It's ours apartment.

Answers

Fifth lesson 5 : question words

1. WHO

1- Who in to be :

Who are you?
I'm student
What is your name?
My name is ali

: عندما نسأل على الصفة الاسم

Who is ali?
Ali is student

2- Who in to do :

Who read my book ?
My father who read your book

What is your name's father ?
My name's father is ali

: سؤال على الشخص مجهول

SINGULAR

Who is this ?
This is my friend

What is her name?
Her name is khadija

Plural

Who are these?
These are my friends

What are their names ?
Their names are janate and abdo rahim

2. Whose :

SINGULAR

Q: whose (اسم الشيء) is this ?

A1: this (اسم الشيء) is (possessive pronouns) حاضر

A2: this is (اسم الشيء) 's غائب (اسم صاحب الشيء)

A3: this is (possessive adjectives) (اسم الشيء)

Examples :

Q: Whose book is this ?

A1: this book is yours

A2: this is Ahmed's book

A3: this is my book

Plural:

Q: whose (جمع اسم الشيء) are these ?

A1: these (اسم الشيء جمع) are (possessive pronouns) حاضر

A2: these are (اسم الشيء جمع) 's غائب (اسم صاحب الشيء)

A3: these are (possessive adjectives) (اسم الشيء جمع)

Examples:

Q: Whose books are these ?

A1: these books are yours

A2: these are Ahmed's books

A3: these are my books

Reviews :

Possessive adjectives

My book

Your book

His book

Her book

Its book

Our book

Your book

Their book

Possessive pronouns

Mine

Yours

His

Hers

Its

Ours

Theirs

Yours

Theirs

1- Put correct answer in these questions :

Who's this

1-Who's this

.....

2-And what's his name

.....

3-Who are these

.....

4-What are their names

.....

Whose

5-Whose ball is this?

.....

6- Whose computers are these?

.....

Who's this

7-Who's this?

.....

10-And what's her name?

.....

11-Who are these?

.....

12-What are their names?

.....

Whose

13-Whose cat is it?

.....

14-Whose car is it?

.....

15-Whose pencils are they?

.....

16-Whose books are they?

.....

17-Whose ruler is this?

.....

18-Whose notebooks are these?

.....

Who

19-who are you ?

.....

20-what is your name ?

.....

***3. What : ***

1. To do

What + to do + pronoun + verb..... ?
(Answer) by to do

Examples:

What do you think?
I think for my business

2. To be

What + to be + pronoun + verb + ing ?
Answer by to be

Are you doing thinking?
I'm thinking for my business

3.Possessive adjectives:

What is your name?
My name is sara

What is your name's car ?
My name's car is Merseyside

What is your favorite language?
My favorite language is English

4. What used in sentences by link.

I work what you work in company.

4. Why

1-Why In to be :

Why are you happy ?

Because I'm going to my parent in USA

2-Why in to do :

Why do you work hard in company

Because i love my job

Expression *that is why* in sentences:

I need money for buying house *that is why* i work hard in company

5. When

1-In to be

When are you here ?

I'm here Since two hours

Since : منذ

2-When in to do :

When do you go to school ?

I go to school at 8.00.

3-Expression *when* in sentence (عندما)

I will go to USA when i have master in law international

6. where

1-In to be :

Where are you now ?

I'm in USA

2- in to do

Where do you live ?

I live in CASABLANCA

3-Expression *where* in sentence

I work where you work

***7. Which* ايهما**

1-In to do

Which do you want fast food or tanjiya?

I want tanjiya more than fast food

2-Expression *which* in sentence الذي او التي

I wish to get car's toyota *which* my father buy it last year.

8.how

1-In to be

How are you?

I'm fine.

2-In to do

How do you get baccalaureate?

I get baccalaureate by hard work and following my teacher's explaining lessons

9.how old are you? كم عمرك

*how old are you?

I'm 35 years old

10.how many times = *how often*

كم عدد المرات

How many times do you go to USA?

I go to USA 10 times.

How often do you eat tacos in year ?

I eat tacos in year 10 times.

11. How many

سؤال خاص بالأعداد محسوبة

1-To be

How many schools in Morocco?

1000 schools in Morocco

2-To do

How many phone do you have in store ?

I have 60 phones in store

12. How much

سؤال خاص بكمية

1-To do

How much rice do you want ?

I want 5 kg from rice

2-To be

سؤال عن الثمن

Without noun

How much is this ?

This is 400 dollars

With noun

How much is this car ?

This car is 5000 dollars

With price الثمن

How much is price's car ?

Price's car is 5000 dollars

With cost تكلفة

How much is cost's car ?

Cost's car is 5000 dollars

13. How long

1 . Time :

How long do you teach in school ?

I teach in school since 20 years ago.

Since

From -----> مقصود منذ

For

Ago -----> مضت

2 : قياس العرض و طول الاشياء .

How long is car ?

Car is 10 meters long

14. How high

قياس ارتفاع الاشياء

How high is building?

Building is 100 meters high

15. How tall

قياس طول الانسان

How tall are you ?

I'm 175 centimeters tall.

16. How wide

قياس مساحة فضاء

How wide is room ?

Room is 19 meters wide.

17. How deep

قياس عمق

How deep is ocean ?

Ocean is 600 meters deep.

18. How far

: قياس مسافة بين أ و ب

How far is CASABLANCA to Rabat ?

CASABLANCA is 90 kilometers from Rabat.

19. How heavy

قياس اوزان ثقيلة

How heavy is Tank ?

Tank is 700 kilograms heavy

20. How much weight

قياس اوزان خفيفة

How much weight is watermelon?

Watermelon is 10 kilograms weight.

21 . How fast

قياس سرعة الاشياء ؟

How fast does car go per km/h ?

Car goes fastly 300 per km/h.

Present Simple 'Wh' Questions

Make present simple 'wh' questions:

1. (where / you / go to school?)

_____ Where do you go to school? _____

2. (what / you / do?)

3. (where / John / come from?)

4. (how long / it / take from London to Paris?)

5. (how often / she / go to the cinema?)

6. (how many children / you / have?)

7. (when / you / get up?)

8. (how often / you / study English?)

9. (what time / the film / start?)

10. (where / you / play tennis?)

11. (what sports / Lucy / like?)

12. (how / they / get to work?)

13. (how often / I / come here?)

14. (where / she / live?)

15. (why / you / eat so much chocolate?)

16. (what / this machine / do?)

17. (who / she / meet on Saturdays?)

18. (how many brothers / she / have?)

19. (how much / this / cost?)

20. (where / you / eat lunch?)

Answers:

1. Where do you go to school?
2. What do you do?
3. Where does John come from?
4. How long does it take from London to Paris?
5. How often does she go to the cinema?
6. How many children do you have?
7. When do you get up?
8. How often do you study English?
9. What time does the film start?
10. Where do you play tennis?
11. What sports does Lucy like?
12. How do they get to work?
13. How often do I come here?
14. Where does she live?
15. Why do you eat so much chocolate?
16. What does this machine do?
17. Who does she meet on Saturdays?
18. How many brothers does she have?
19. How much does this cost?
20. Where do you eat lunch?

Present Simple 'Wh' Questions with 'Be'

Make a question with 'be':

1. Where / John?

__Where is John?__

2. Why / they / hungry?

__Why are they hungry?__

3. Where / we?

4. Who / you?

5. Why / he / late?

6. What / this?

7. Where / Jimmy ?

8. How old / she ?

9. How / you ?

10. Where / the station?

11. What time / it now?

12. Where / Pedro / from?

13. Why / they / in the kitchen?

14. How / the food?

15. How long / the journey?

16. How old / you ?

17. Why / I / last ?

18. What time / the concert?

19. Where / she?

20. Who / Julie / with?

Answers:

1. Where is John?
2. Why are they hungry?
3. Where are we?
4. Who are you?
5. Why is he late?
6. What is this?
7. Where is Jimmy ?
8. How old is she ?
9. How are you ?
10. Where is the station?
11. What time is it now?
12. Where is Pedro from?
13. Why are they in the kitchen?
14. How is the food?
15. How long is the journey?
16. How old are you ?
17. Why am I last ?
18. What time is the concert?
19. Where is she?
20. Who is Julie with?

1-*Writing in routine daily*

In morning i wake up at 8.00, i go to bathroom and i wash my face and i brush my teeth after that i eat my breakfast and i wear my clothes and i prepare my school bag and after that i go to school at 9.00 by bus school when i reach to school i meet my friends and i join to classroom for studying language English and my teacher explain us lesson and she gives us homework after that i come back to my home and i change my clothes and i eat my dinner and i do homework and i watch TV after that i go to sleep.

2-Writing for presentation :

Present yourself please

Hello my full name is houssam iimira, I'm 33 years old and i live in CASABLANCA and my nationality is Moroccan, in *my studying* i have got baccalaureate literature in CASABLANCA at 2020 and i have got licence law private in university Hassan 2 at 2023 and i have got certification of Microsoft office in ofppt at 2024 and in *my experience* working i have test in function juridical adviser in company OPEC from 2024 to 2025.

I worked juridical adviser (مستشار قانوني) in company OPEC from 2025 to 2027.

I'm currently working juridical adviser in company OPEC even now and *in my skills languages* i can speak English by LEVEL good and i can speak Arabic classic by high level and i can speak Spanish by low level or basic language and i can speak French operationally *in extra time* or out work i read books in library and i practice sport in swimming pool and i do formation available (متاح) for developing my skills professional.

Thank you.

3-Writing for dialogue about dating

We must use word questions in writing's dialogue

How
What : for name
How old
Where
What : for activities in your life
Why
Which
How many times
Who
How : for way going to your place
Whose
When

4-*Dialogue for dating*

Houssam  : Hi

Noura  : Hello

Houssam  : How are you?

Noura  : I'm fine and you ?

Houssam  : I'm fine too thank you

Noura  : Welcome, What is your name?

Houssam  : My name is houssam and you?

Noura  : My name is noura, How old are you?

Houssam  : I'm 33 years old and you?

Noura  : I'm 32 years old, Where do you live?

Houssam  : I live in CASABLANCA Morocco and you?

Noura  : I live in New York USA, What do you do in your life?

***Houssam*  : I'm teacher in ASSOCIATION SAADA CASABLANCA and you ?**

***Noura*  : I work director general in company Microsoft, Why do you choose this job ?**

***Houssam*  : Because i like to teach language English to people Moroccan, and you ?**

***Noura*  : Because i like it, which do you prefer; you love what you work or you just work about money?**

***Houssam*  : I prefer to work what i love more than i work about money, How many times do you get vacation in year?**

***Noura*  : I get vacation in year 3 times.**

***Houssam*  : Who supports you in your work?**

***Noura*  : My family who support me in my work.**

***Houssam*  : How do you go to work ?**

***Noura*  : I go to work by car.**

***Houssam*  : Whose car is this?**

***Noura*  : This car is mine.**

***Houssam*  : When do you begin this job?**

***Noura*  : I begin this job from 5 years.**

***Houssam*  : Good job**

***Noura*  : Thank you.**

***Houssam*  : welcome.**

Present Simple Positive with 'Be' – Mixed exercise 1

Make sentences with 'be' using the short forms (choose positive, negative or question).

1. (he / be / French)

2. (we / not / be / cold)

3. (he / be / a footballer?)

4. (where / be / John?)

5. (we / be / German)

6. (he / not / be / a journalist)

7. (we / not / be / singers)

8. (you / be / a nurse?)

9. (they / be / from Libya)

10. (where / be / David?)

11. (how / be / your mother?)

12. (we / be / thirsty)

13. (how long / be / the film?)

14. (how often / be / you in London?)

15. (he / be / handsome)

16. (I / not / be / English)

17. (you / not / be / a doctor)

18. (she / not / be / Italian)

19. (he / be / my brother)

20. (you / not / be / Egyptian)

Answers

1. He's French.
2. We aren't cold.
3. Is he a footballer?
4. Where's John?
5. We're German.
6. He isn't a journalist.
7. We aren't singers.
8. Are you a nurse?
9. They're from Libya.
10. Where's David?
11. How's your mother?
12. We're thirsty.
13. How long's the film?
14. How often are you in London?
15. He's handsome.
16. I'm not English.
17. You aren't a doctor.
18. She isn't Italian.
19. He's my brother.
20. You aren't Egyptian.

Present Simple with 'Be' – Mixed Exercise 2

Make present simple sentences with 'be' (positive, negative or question).

1. (you / be / hungry)

2. (they / not / be / at home)

3. (when / be / the party?)

4. (Julie and Ann / be / on the bus?)

5. (she / be / kind?)

6. (they / be / German?)

7. (you / be / late?)

8. (I / be / early?)

9. (you / be / from London?)

10. (they / be / sad)

11. (she / be / beautiful)

12. (we / be / in love)

13. (where / be / you?)

14. (I / be / happy)

15. (what / be / this?)

16. (I / not / be / too hot)

17. (she / not / be / called Julia)

18. (how old / be / she?)

19. (what time / be / the train?)

20. (he / not / be / an accountant)

Answers

1. You're hungry.
2. They aren't at home.
3. When's the party?
4. Are Julie and Ann on the bus?
5. Is she kind?
6. Are they German?
7. Are you late?
8. Am I early?
9. Are you from London?
10. They're sad.
11. She's beautiful.
12. We're in love.
13. Where are you?
14. I'm happy.
15. What's this?
16. I'm not too hot.
17. She isn't called Julia.
18. How old is she?
19. What time is the train?
20. He isn't an accountant.

Present Simple Mixed Exercise 1 - other verbs

Make the present simple (choose positive, negative or question).

1. (he / drive to work every day)

2. (I / not / think you're right)

3. (we / have enough time?)

4. (I / eat cereal in the morning)

5. (they / write e-mails every day?)

6. (you / watch a lot of TV)

7. (he / not / read the newspaper)

8. (she / dance often?)

9. (where / I / come on Mondays?)

10. (what / you / do at the weekend?)

11. (you / not / drink much tea)

12. (how / he / travel to work?)

13. (they / not / like vegetables)

14. (she / catch a cold every winter)

15. (I / go out often?)

16. (you / speak English?)

17. (we / take the bus often)

18. (she / not / walk to school)

19. (what / you / buy in the supermarket?)

20. (how / he / carry such a heavy bag?)

Answers

1. He drives to work every day.
2. I don't think you're right.
3. Do we have enough time?
4. I eat cereal in the morning.
5. Do they write e-mails every day?
6. You watch a lot of TV.
7. He doesn't read the newspaper.
8. Does she dance often?
9. Where do I come on Mondays?
10. What do you do at the weekend?
11. You don't drink much tea.
12. How does he travel to work?
13. They don't like vegetables.
14. She catches a cold every winter.
15. Do I go out often?
16. Do you speak English?
17. We take the bus often.
18. She doesn't walk to school.
19. What do you buy in the supermarket?
20. How does he carry such a heavy bag?

Present Simple Mixed Exercise 2 - other verbs

Make the present simple (choose positive, negative or question).

1. (they / wear suits to work?)

2. (he / not / say much)

3. (when / she / study?)

4. (she / know a lot about cooking)

5. (we / make dinner at the weekends)

6. (I / not / leave work on time very often)

7. (she / meet her brother every week?)

8. (they / find London's weather cold)

9. (we / use the computer every day?)

10. (you / not / smoke)

11. (why / we / always get into trouble?)

12. (what/ they / usually cook?)

13. (what / we / need?)

14. (they / not / win at tennis)

15. (what / they / like to watch on TV?)

16. (I / do my homework every night)

17. (why / she / swim every morning?)

18. (you / walk to the station every day)

19. (he / teach in a school?)

20. (he / study English at a night class)

Answers

1. Do they wear suits to work?
2. He doesn't say much.
3. When does she study?
4. She knows a lot about cooking.
5. We make dinner at the weekends.
6. I don't leave work on time very often.
7. Does she meet her brother every week?
8. They find London's weather cold.
9. Do we use the computer every day?
10. You don't smoke.
11. Why do we always get into trouble?
12. What do they usually cook?
13. What do we need?
14. They don't win at tennis.
15. What do they like to watch on TV?
16. I do my homework every night.
17. Why does she swim every morning?
18. You walk to the station every day.
19. Does he teach in a school?
20. He studies English at a night class.

Present Simple Mixed Exercise 3 - other verbs

Make the present simple tense (choose positive, negative or question)

1. (we / not / go out much)

2. (they / think it's a good idea)

3. (he / know how to play the violin?)

4. (why / I / have to clean up?)

5. (she / not / sleep late at the weekends)

6. (I / love studying languages?)

7. (we / not / believe the Prime Minister)

8. (you / understand the question?)

9. (she / not / want to go to the cinema)

10. (I / like trying new kinds of food)

11. (David / want some coffee?)

12. (what / Lucy / do at the weekends?)

13. (they / not / work late on Fridays)

14. (she / have three daughters)

15. (you / own a car?)

16. (where / Alicia / work?)

17. (when / she / go to her Chinese class?)

18. (I / not / believe you)

19. (she / think about her holidays often)

20. (you / like going to restaurants?)

Answers

1. We don't go out much.
2. They think it's a good idea.
3. Does he know how to play the violin?
4. Why do I have to clean up?
5. She doesn't sleep late at the weekends.
6. Do I love studying languages?
7. We don't believe the Prime Minister.
8. Do you understand the question?
9. She doesn't want to go to the cinema.
10. I like trying new kinds of food.
11. Does David want some coffee?
12. What does Lucy do at the weekends?
13. They don't work late on Fridays.
14. She has three daughters.
15. Do you own a car?
16. Where does Alicia work?
17. When does she go to her Chinese class?
18. I don't believe you.
19. She thinks about her holidays often.
20. Do you like going to restaurants?

Present Simple Form: 'be' and other verbs - mixed exercise 1

Make the present simple, positive, negative or question:

1. I _____ (be) in a café now.
2. _____ (she / play) tennis every week?
3. They _____ (go) to the cinema every Wednesday.
4. _____ (she / be) a singer?
5. You _____ (find) the weather here cold.
6. _____ (they / be) on the bus?
7. Lucy _____ (ride) her bicycle to work.
8. Why _____ (he / be) in France?
9. I _____ (not / play) the piano often.
10. It _____ (not / be) cold today.
11. We _____ (be) from Portugal.
12. _____ (we / make) too much noise at night?
13. Where _____ (Harry / study)?
14. _____ (it / be) foggy today?
15. We _____ (not / be) late.
16. They _____ (not / like) animals.
17. Where _____ (you / be)?
18. He _____ (not / be) an accountant.
19. _____ (the dog / eat) chicken?
20. She _____ (be) my sister.

Answers:

1. I'm in a café now.
2. Does she play tennis every week?
3. They go to the cinema every Wednesday.
4. Is she a singer?
5. You find the weather here cold.
6. Are they on the bus?
7. Lucy rides her bicycle to work.
8. Why is he in France?
9. I don't play the piano often.
10. It isn't cold today.
11. We are from Portugal.
12. Do we make too much noise at night?
13. Where does Harry study?
14. Is it foggy today?
15. We aren't late.
16. They don't like animals.
17. Where are you?
18. He isn't an accountant.
19. Does the dog eat chicken?
20. She's my sister.

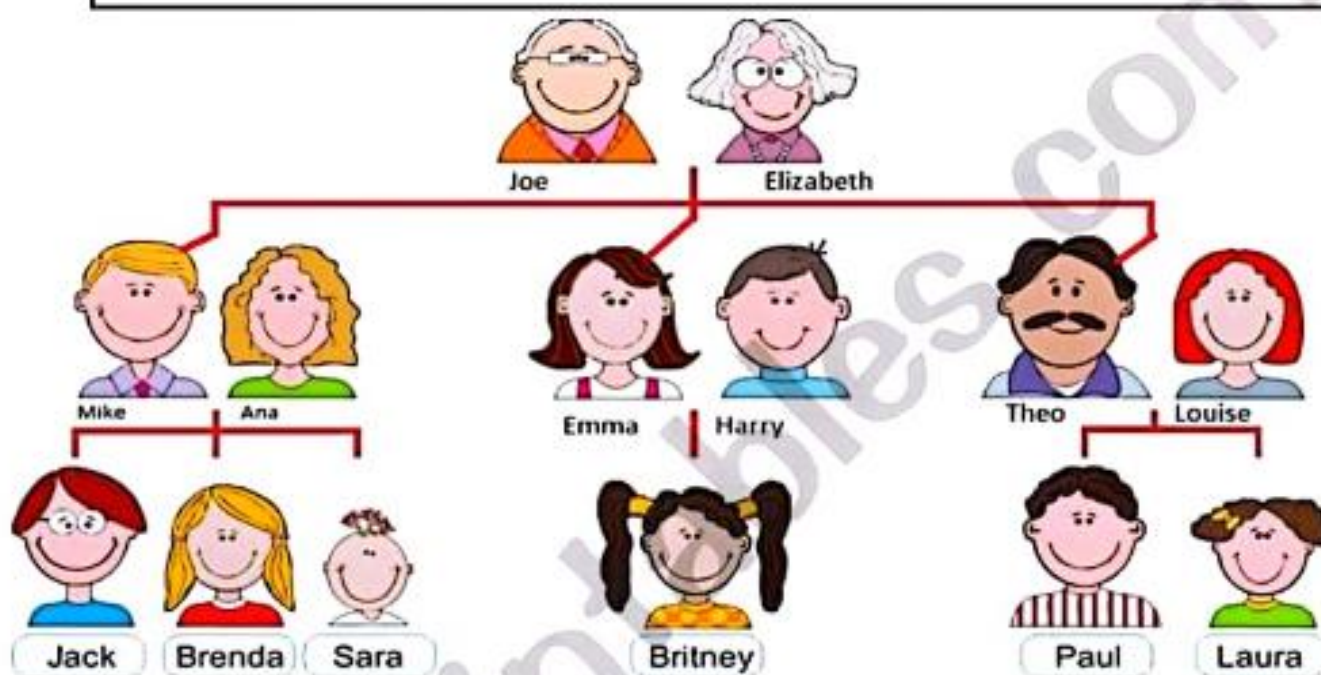
Sixth lesson 6 : Family Members

1. My father's father is my grandfather.
2. My father's wife is my mother.
3. My father's son is my brother.
4. My father's daughter is my sister.
5. My mother is my father's wife.
6. My father is my mother's husband.
7. My father's brother is my uncle.
8. My father's sister is my aunt.
9. My mother's brother is my uncle.
10. My mother's sister is my aunt.
11. My aunt's son and daughter are my cousin.
12. My uncle's son and daughter are my cousin.
13. My mother's mother is my grandmother.
14. Sister's son is my nephew.
15. Brother's son is my nephew.
16. My sister's daughter is my niece.
17. My brother's daughter is my niece.
18. My uncle, my aunt and my cousins are my relatives family.
19. My father and my mother are my parents.
20. My grandfather and my grandmother are my grandparents.
21. My son and my daughter are my children.
22. My father's son is my brother
23. My mother's son is my brother
24. My father's daughter is my sister
25. Mother's daughter is my sister
26. My son's son is grandson.
27. My daughter's daughter is my granddaughter
28. My brother's wife is sister in law
29. My sister's husband is brother in law
30. My father's new wife is step mother
31. My mother's new husband is step father
32. Step mother's son is step brother
33. Step father's daughter is step sister

EXERCISE

1. Write the correct noun to each family member.

son father grandmother niece cousin nephew brother sister
mother aunt uncle mother-in-law granddaughter grandparents
grandson son-in-law father-in-law ~~daughter~~ grandfather daughter-in-law parents



- Sara is Ana's daughter.
- Britney is Joe's _____.
- Paul is Emma's _____.
- Theo is Laura's _____.
- Joe and Elizabeth are Jack's _____.
- Louise is Elizabeth's _____.
- Ana is Brenda's _____.
- Paul is Joe's _____.
- Jack is Mike's _____.
- Harry is Brenda's _____.
- Laura is Ana's _____.
- Emma and Harry are Britney's _____.

- m) Louise is Jack's _____.
- n) Joe is Ana's _____.
- o) Sara is Britney's _____.
- p) Elizabeth is Harry's _____.
- q) Jack is Brenda's _____.
- r) Joe is Sara's _____.
- s) Elizabeth is Laura's _____.
- t) Brenda is Sara's _____.
- u) Harry is Joe's _____.

2. Complete the dialogs with the correct expression.

spell say repeat thanks sorry

- a) Betty: Teacher, I need your help!
 Teacher: Sure, Kate. Go on.
 Betty: How do you _____ "gato" in English?
 Teacher: Gato in English is "cat".
 Betty: Could you _____, please? I didn't get it.
 Teacher: Sure. It's "cat".
 Betty: _____?
 Teacher: It is "cat".
 Betty: Ok. How do you _____ it?
 Teacher: C-A-T.
 Betty: _____, Teacher!



Don't forget take care don't be late have a good time

- b) Henry: Hey, mom. Can I go to James' house? He invited me to play video games with him.
 Mom: Sure. But _____ for dinner.
 Henry: I won't.
 Mom: And _____ your coat. It's cold outside.
 Henry: Oh yes, that's true. Thank you.
 Mom: _____, son.
 _____.



say cheese don't worry call me drive carefully

c) Dad: I can't believe my little girl is already in college. Time really flies.

Julia: I will miss you, dad.

Dad: I will miss you too. Be cautious on the road and

Julia: _____, I'll be fine.

Dad: And _____ if you need anything.

Julia: Alright, dad.

Mom: Let's take a picture, guys. _____!

Julia and Dad: CHEESE!



mother + father =
parents

brother + sister =
Siblings

husband + wife =
Spouses

daughter + son =
children

family alive before you =
ancestors

family alive after you =
descendants

Exercise in family members

My father's father is

My father's wife is

My father's son is

My father's daughter is

..... is my father's wife.

..... is my mother's husband.

My father's brother is

My father's sister is

My mother's brother is

My mother's sister is

My aunt's son and daughter are

My uncle's son and daughter are

My mother's mother is

Sister's son is

Brother's son is

My sister's daughter is

My brother's daughter is

My uncle, my aunt and my cousins are

My father and my mother are

My grandfather and my grandmother are

My son and my daughter are

my father's son is

My mother's son is

my father's daughter is

mother's daughter is

My son's son is

My daughter's daughter is

My brother's wife is

My sister's husband is

My father's new wife is

My mother's new husband is

Step mother's son is

Step father's daughter is

Husband and wife are

Sisters and brothers are

Daughters and sons are

Family alive before you, it calls

Family alive after you, it calls

Seventh Lesson 7: Countable and Uncountable Nouns

A- Noun Countable

player

Dollar

house

table

Car

bus

1- Singular in noun countable

I have good player

Payer is crazy man

I get one dollar

2- plural in noun countable

I have 10 good players

10 players are in Great Stadium

3- indefinite article:

an = a = 1

1 . An

I use an umbrella

I eat an apple

I don't Hate an italian woman

2 . A

- I get a dollar

- USA Sends a Visa to me

- I drink a bottle of Water

4- Any / Some

1. Any- ای : Singular

Negative

I don't have any dollar.

Question

do you have any dsplan?

Positive

I hate any person Hates me

2- Some بعض : plural:

I eat Some apples

I have Some bags

5-Few / many

1 . Few قليل plural:

I Send few messages to my friends

I use few pens in classroom

I See Few Videos in Instagram's reels

I need few minutes For passing Exam

2 many عديد plural

I buy many phones

I Sell many cameras

I take many pictures

I Watch many Series in Netflix's platform

B-noun uncountable*

Liquid : water . Oil . Blood

Solid : gold . Stone . Iron . Wood

Gas : oxygen . Nitrogen . Fume

Moral nouns :

1. **Emotion**: sad . Happy . Angry . Guilty
2. **Things no visible**: news . Formation . Language . Music . Advice . Truth . Time . Money . Liar

1. Noun uncountable haven't plural and singular and article indefinite :

I inhale good oxygen in the forest.

I drink water.

I donate blood to patients in the hospital.

I like gold more than diamond.

2. Using Some and any with uncountable noun:

1. Some:

I give the dog some water because it is thirsty.

I use some oil in products cosmetic.

I listen some advice from my parents and teacher.

2. Any:

Negative

I don't send any money to my friends because I'm jobless.

Question

Do you have any time to help me about my preparation for exam?

Positive

I eat any food from my mother's cooks.

3. Using Little and much with noun uncountable:

1. Much:

I buy much rice.

I sell product's china from market DERB OMAR so much.

I love you so much

I hate her so much

2. Little:

I present little gold to customers.

I eat little butter in cake.

I give you little time for giving back my money.

C-Special Rules:

1-*Lot of :*

تستعمل في

Countable noun and uncountable noun:

إذا كانت الكمية في countable noun كثيرة جدا :

I buy a lot of carrots from farm

إذا كانت الكمية كثيرة في uncountable noun قد نميزها على

much بالوفرة كثيرة جدا:

There is a lot of water in oceans.

2-*Containers + Uncountable noun = countable noun*

1. I buy bag of flour.
2. I drink can of butter
3. I take bottle of water
4. give me cup of coffee

For example we can say A jar of jam

A can of coke.
A slice of cheese.
A bottle / a glass of water.
A loaf of bread.
A bar of chocolate.
A carton of milk.
A bag of flour.

A box of cereal
A bowl of sugar.
A pack of gum
A tub of margarine
A tube of ketchup.
A cup of coffee.
A pocket of butter.

Exercises:

A/ Write "c" if the noun is countable, "uc" if the noun is uncountable.

Example: tomato: "c"

tree
sugar
rice
water
cup
friend
school
love
table
time

B/• Use a singular or plural verb in the following exercises.
Remember uncountable nouns always take singular nouns.

Example: I like cheese. (like)

1. She (read).....books every day.
2. They (come).....to school by minibus .
3. Karim (work).....very hard at home.
4. I (like).....to sit at the seaside in Alanya.
5. We always (do)the exercises very carefully.
6. Mounir never (cook)meals to us at home.
7. Some students (drive)very fast at the school campus.
8. He (speak).....two languages ; English and French .
9. We (watch)good films on tv every day
10. The class (begin).....at 8:15
11. Milk.....healthy. (be)
12. Grape juice.....good. (taste)
13. Grapes.....delicious. (be)
14. A grape.....on the floor. (be)
15. Rome.....(be) a beautiful city.
16. Monkeysbananas. (eat)
17. Sandwiches..... good. (be)

18. You..... great pizza. (make)
19. The picturesbeautiful. (look)
20. English..... interesting. (be)

GOOD LUCK.

D- Examples in Countable VS Uncountable

1-Nouns Countable

A carrot /carrots
An apricot /apricots
An orange / oranges
A cake /cakes
An avocado / avocados
A banana / banana
A cucumber / cucumbers
A potato / potatoes
A turnip / turnips
A courgette / courgettes

2-Noun Uncountable

Milk
Coffee
Sugar
Water
Lemonade
Juice
Cheese
Bread
Meat
Tea
Butter
Jam
Honey
Beef
Oil

Eighth lesson 8: There is / There are

There is a / an / + singular countable nouns

There is some + uncountable nouns.

There are + plural countable nouns.

1) - there is : a - an - one (1) : Singular:

there is + a / an / 1:one + noun countable + place

1- a : there is a car in parking.

2- an : there is an apple in basket.

3- one (1) : there is one phone in box.

***2) there are: Some-many-lot of - Few - numbers => plural: ***

there are + Some / many / a lot of / few / Countable noun + place.

1)- Some: there are Some passengers in airplane.

2)-many: there are many cars in Street.

3)- a lot of: there are lot of airplanes in airport's Mohammed 5

4)- Few: there are Few cows in farm.

5)- number: there are 10 pens in bag.

3)- there is : some / a lot of:

there is + Some / a lot of + unCountable noun + place.

1)- some : there is some milk in bottle.

2)- lot of : there is a lot of gold in mountains atlas "HAWZE".

4)-interrogation /questions in:*

there is : a-an-any

there are : any

1→ there is // there are in countable noun

1)- SINGULAR:

1 - Is there a phone in a table ?

Yes, there is.

no, there is not.

2) - is there an orange in Basket?

yes, there is

No, there is not

3)- is there any dollar in my account bank?

yes, there is

No, there is not

***2)- plural:**

are there any Students in University hassan 2?

No, there are not.

yes, there are some

2) --> there is in uncountable noun:

Is there any Water in Nile's river?
yes, there is Some
no, there is not.

Exercise: Using "There is" and "There are"

Complete the following sentences using "there is" or "there are" based on the context provided.

1. *Singular Countable Nouns:*

- 1. Is there ____ (a/an) book on the table?
 - Yes, ____ (there is/there are).
 - No, ____ (there is/there are) not.
- 2. Is there ____ (a/an) apple in the fridge?
 - Yes, ____ (there is/there are).
 - No, ____ (there is/there are) not.
- 3. Is there ____ (any) money in your wallet?
 - Yes, ____ (there is/there are).
 - No, ____ (there is/there are) not.

2. *Plural Countable Nouns:*

- 1. Are there ____ (any) teachers in the classroom?
 - Yes, ____ (there are/there is) some.
 - No, ____ (there are/there is) not.
- 2. Are there ____ (any) cars in the parking lot?
 - Yes, ____ (there are/there is) some.
 - No, ____ (there are/there is) not.

3. *Uncountable Nouns:*

- 1. Is there ____ (any) milk in the fridge?
 - Yes, ____ (there is/there are) some.
 - No, ____ (there is/there are) not.

- 2. Is there ____ (any) sugar in the cupboard?
 - Yes, ____ (there is/there are) some.
 - No, ____ (there is/there are) not.

EXERCISE

Countable - Uncountable

① Is it countable or uncountable?

 rice	 sugar	 bread
burger	water	onion
potato	tomato	meat
banana	avocado	yoghurt
salad	celery	orange
pasta	ketchup	butter
milk	cheese	orange juice

② Fill the gaps with **some - any - a - an**

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| 1. There is <input type="text"/> apple. |  | 8. There are <input type="text"/> bananas. |
| 2. There aren't <input type="text"/> eggs. | | 9. There is <input type="text"/> bread. |
| 3. There isn't <input type="text"/> sandwich. | | 10. There are <input type="text"/> tomatoes. |
| 4. There is <input type="text"/> orange juice. | | 11. There isn't <input type="text"/> cheese. |
| 5. There isn't <input type="text"/> rice. | | 12. There is <input type="text"/> avocado. |
| 6. There aren't <input type="text"/> oranges. |  | 13. There isn't <input type="text"/> ketchup |
| 7. There isn't <input type="text"/> milk. | | 14. there is <input type="text"/> water |

③ Fill the gaps with **How much - How many**

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. How many potatoes are there? | 6. <input type="text"/> bread is there? |
| 2. <input type="text"/> butter is there? | 7. <input type="text"/> sausages are there? |
| 3. <input type="text"/> cheese is there? | 8. <input type="text"/> mayonnaise is there? |
| 4. <input type="text"/> honey is there? | 9. <input type="text"/> sugar is there? |
| 5. <input type="text"/> oranges are there? | 10. <input type="text"/> sandwiches are there? |

A / AN SOME / ANY

Choose between A / AN and SOME / ANY

1. There is milk in the fridge.
2. There is tomato on the plate.
3. Is there cheese? Yes, there is.
4. There aren't eggs.
5. There is apple in the fridge.
6. There are tomatoes.
7. There isn't burger
8. Is there water in the bottle?
9. There aren't carrots in the basket.
10. There isn't carrot in the basket.
11. Are there carrots in the basket? No, there aren't.
12. There are peas in the fridge.

Choose between THERE IS or THERE ARE.

1. There is / There are some bananas.
2. There is / There are some milk.
3. There isn't / There aren't any orange juice.
4. There isn't / There aren't any broccoli on the table.
5. Is there / Are there any vegetables in the fridge.
6. Is there / Are there any bread.



A, an, some, any, a lot of, much, many, how much, how many?

Dialogue 1

Mary: I'm hungry. Are there _____ crisps?

Mom: No, there aren't _____ but there are _____ sandwiches in the fridge.

Mary: Great! I'll have _____ sandwich with cheese and tomato and then I'll drink _____ orange juice. Is there _____ chocolate cake left?

Mom: No, there isn't _____ cake. I'll go to the supermarket later. _____ tomatoes are left?

Mary: There aren't _____ tomatoes here. I can see only four.

Mom: Oh! We eat _____ tomatoes every day. _____ butter is there?

Mary: There is _____ butter, mom. We have fifteen packets of butter. Don't buy more!

Mom: Ok then, Would you like _____ tea from the supermarket?

Mary: Yes, I'd like _____ please but don't buy a lot of tea.



Dialogue 2

Bob: Welcome to my party Peter! Would you like _____ juice?

Peter: Yes, please. Thank you! What a nice party! _____ presents did you get?

Bob: I got _____ presents. Look! There are over 20 presents here.

Peter: WOW! Is there _____ birthday cake left?

Bob: Yes, there is. _____ pieces do you want?

Peter: Just one piece. There are _____ people here today. That's a big party.

Bob: It really is.

Peter: _____ pizza did you cook for all these people?

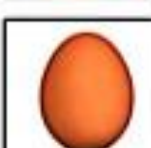
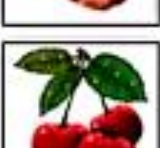
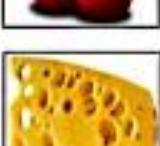
Bob: My mom didn't cook _____ pizza because I don't like it, but she made _____ sandwiches. Can you see them? There are over forty sandwiches on the table.

Peter: Yes, I can see them. Let's go and eat _____.



Well done!!

Countable/ Uncountable Nouns

	olives :		apple :		
	grapes :		egg :		
	peas :		rice :		
	olive oil :		meat :		
	bread :		cherries :		
	honey :		flour :		
	sausage :		jam :		
	tea :		chips :		
	cheese :		salt :		
	cereal :		burger :		

Countable and Uncountable Noun

What is countable or uncountable?

1. hamburger  	2. cheese  	3. sugar 
4. chicken  	5. sausage  	6. eggs 

Fill the gaps with **a/ an/ some/ any**.

- There is apple. 
- There is orange. 
- There is cheese. 
- There are tomatoes. 
- There isn't chicken. 
- There aren't grapes. 
- There are bananas. 
- There is bread. 
- There isn't butter. 
- There are potatoes. 

Choose the correct answer.

- some chocolate 
- some bananas. 
- some rice. 
- a strawberry. 
- some eggs. 
- Is there any chicken?  Yes, .
- Are there any oranges?  No, .
- Is there any juice?  No, .
- Is there any jam?  Yes, .
- Are there any French fries?  Yes, .

There is or There are

1. Fill in the gaps with *there's* or *there are*.

1. seven books on the shelf.
2. a bag near the table.
3. cars between the buses.
4. six forks on the table.
5. a picture near the window.
6. three pens on the desk.
7. many toys in the box.
8. ten apples on the table.
9. a mouse behind the sofa.
10. many exercises in this textbook
11. some eggs in the fridge.
12. five books on the table.
13. a girl in the garden.
14. two armchairs in our living room.
15. a key in my bag.
16. a dog under the chair.
17. eleven football players in a team.
18. a witch under the table.
19. a lot of books in the library.
20. a pair of shoes under the chair.

2. Fill in the blanks with: *There isn't* or *There aren't*.

1. many costumes to choose from.
2. many girls in my class.
3. a princess in the room.
4. a carton of juice in the fridge.
5. eleven desks in our classroom.
6. a dress in the wardrobe.
7. any flowers in the vase.
8. Many vampires at this party.
9. two kitchens in the house.
10. a scary zombie in the garden.

There is / There are



Meaning: We use there is and there are to say that something exists or does not exist.

In the positive:

There is + singular noun = There is a cat.

There are + plural noun = There are two cats.

There is + uncountable noun = There is some water on the floor.

(Note: we use **SOME** with uncountable nouns, you could also use a few, a little, a lot, etc.)

In the negative:

There isn't + singular noun = There isn't a cat in the garden.

There aren't + plural noun = There aren't two cats in the garden.

There isn't + uncountable noun = There isn't any milk in the fridge.

(Note: we use **any** with uncountable nouns in the negative)

In a question:

There is a dog in the kitchen = Is there a dog in the kitchen?

There are dogs in the kitchen = Are there dogs in the kitchen?

(Note: when forming a question the verb to be is at the beginning of the question)

There is some juice in the glass = Is there some juice in the glass?

Contractions:

There is = There's

There are = There are

There isn't = There is not

There aren't = There are not

How many + plural noun + are there?

How many students are there in your class?

How many teachers are there in your school?



There is / There are



We use *is* for one but
we use *are* for more
than one.



Example: There is two chairs. ✗
There are two chairs. ✓



Complete the sentences using is or are.

1. There _____ seven monkeys in the tree.
2. There _____ a fish in the water.
3. There _____ no crocodile in the river.
4. There _____ two boys in the classroom.
5. There _____ five erasers on the floor.
6. There _____ a bird flying in the air.
7. There _____ ten ants on the wall.
8. There _____ a new teacher in school.

THERE IS / THERE ARE



There is	a	pen on the table.
There are	(two)	pens on the table

There aren't <u>any</u> pens on the table.
OR
There aren't (two) pens on the table. There are (three) pens on the table.

Is there	a	pen on the table?
Are there	(two)	pens on the table?

Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.

There is = There's

There are → "There are" does not have a contraction form

● Fill in the blanks below to complete the sentences.

1. There is a library next to the park.
2. All the students went home. There aren't any students in the classroom.
3. _____ 50 states in the United States.
4. No, _____ polar bears at the South Pole.
5. A: _____ a message for me? B: No, _____.
6. Why _____ so many cars in the parking lot?
7. A: I'm hungry. B: _____ a restaurant across the street.
8. How many days _____ in March, thirty or thirty-one?
9. _____ a few things I have to do this afternoon.
10. A: _____ a post office nearby? B: I'm sorry, I don't know.
11. _____ something I can help you with?
12. No, _____ public holidays next month.
13. How many countries _____ in the world?
14. _____ a woman in the picture. She is smiling.
15. _____ only three more days before the exam. Let's study!



Name: _____

Date: _____

There is / There are

Write affirmative sentences using there is or there are.

1. _____ Four shops.
2. _____ a lot of parks.
3. _____ a store.
4. _____ some cars.
5. _____ a library.
6. _____ a bus station.
7. _____ a lion.

Write the sentences in exercise 1 into the negative form.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

Choose the correct words.

1. There's / There are a computer.
2. There's / There are four cars.
3. Is there a / Are there any windows in the kitchen?
4. Is there a / Are there any student in the classroom?
5. There isn't / There aren't any pens on the desk.
6. There isn't a / There aren't any milk in the fridge.
7. Is there / Are there a bookcase?

Complete the questions and short answers using the correct form of there is or there are.

1. _____ a tree in this park? No, _____
2. _____ an internet café in your city? Yes, _____
3. _____ any hospitals near here? No, _____
4. _____ any buildings next to your school? Yes, _____



There is / There are

Complete the sentence with is or are

- a) There _____ 25 students in the class.
- b) There _____ a hospital in the city centre.
- c) There _____ a big supermarket near my house.
- d) There _____ two teachers in the room.
- e) There _____ 12 songs on this CD.
- f) There _____ a good film on TV tonight.
- g) There _____ his friends.
- h) There _____ your mobile phone.
- i) There _____ a computer and a TV in my room.
- j) There _____ seven books in my bag.
- k) There _____ no homework today.

Fill in the gaps using There is, There are, Are there or Is there

- 1) _____ a big kitchen in my flat.
- 2) _____ two bedrooms in my house.
- 3) _____ a bookcase in your room?
- 4) _____ a chair, a desk and a wardrobe by the window.
- 5) _____ three floors in your house?
- 6) _____ a living room and a dining room in my flat.
- 7) _____ five chairs at the table.
- 8) _____ a bookshelf on the wall?
- 9) _____ many boxes under the table?
- 10) _____ a bed and a wardrobe between the chairs.
- 11) _____ a new carpet on the floor?
- 12) _____ a new carpet and an old carpet on the floor.

GRAMMAR QUIZ

THERE IS *and* THERE ARE

• Complete these sixteen sentences to score your knowledge of **THERE IS** & **THERE ARE**.

1. ... many people standing outside the movie theater.
a) There is
b) There are
c) There
2. ... a big group of people looking at things in the museum.
a) There
b) There is
c) There are
3. There ... a small cat playing with some toys.
a) are
b) have
c) is
4. (A) How many cups ...?
(B) There are two cups.
a) are there
b) there are
c) there have
5. (A) Are there two birds in the tree?
(B) Yes,
a) there is
b) are there
c) there are
6. ... three people in the classroom: two students and one teacher.
a) There are
b) There is
c) Are there
7. (A) ... there a taxi waiting for us?
(B) Yes,
a) Is there / is there
b) Is there / there is
c) Are there / there is
8. (A) ... any books on the table?
(B) No,
a) There are / aren't
b) Are there / there aren't
c) Are there / there isn't
9. ... four chairs and one table in the dining room.
a) There is
b) Are there
c) There are
10. (A) Is there anything I can do to help?
(B) Yes,
a) there are
b) is there
c) there is
11. Why ... so many cars parked near the library?
a) are there
b) there
c) is there
12. ... a great action movie playing at the theater. Do you want to see it?
a) Is there
b) There is
c) There are
13. I don't see any buses. Why ... any buses?
a) aren't there
b) are there
c) there aren't
14. (A) ... a good reason why he is late?
(B) Yes,
a) Is there / there is
b) There are / there is
c) Is there / there are
15. ... any English exams that we have to study for next week.
a) There no
b) There isn't
c) There aren't
16. Please wait here for a moment. ... something I have to get in my car.
a) Are there
b) There is
c) There are

15 – 16 = Excellent

13 – 14 = Good

12 or Less = Study More!

Ninth lesson 9: Expressing permission

1- *Communication / interrogation.*

Can I go to school?

yes, you can

no, you can't

Can you stop using phone in classroom ?

Yes you can

No i can't

Can he pass Exam?

Yes he can

No he can't

Can She get VISA USA?

Yes, she Can

No, She can't

can park open before morning ?

Yes it can

No it can't

can we travel to MARRAKECH?

yes, you can

no you can't

Can you Show me your Gard identify ?

Yes we can

No we can't

Can people Respect law in morocco ?

yes, they can

no, they can't

2- *Vocabulary*/ *communication*

Permission allow to do something;

1- *Accepting request:*

Can you allow to go out from work before time ?

Yes you can, because you have justifiable logic

2- *Refuse Permission to allow to do something,

1. Forbidden = رفض قاطع = مجرم = محرم

لا يمكن ان يتغير لانه محرم من الله او مجرم من قانون المغربي

Can Muslim drink alcohol ?

no he can't, because it is forbidden in laws Islam and allah punishes who do that

2. Denying = رفض من ولي الامر = رفض لسبب معين

لكن ممكن ان يتغير السبب و يصبح مقبول

Can moroccan will be president USA?

No, he can't, it is denying because law American gives right person born in land American

3. Things you can't do them in house:

I can't play football in house

I can't stole things' parent

I can't drink alcohol in house

4. Things you can do them in house:

You can clean house and you help your mother

You can pray salate

You can buy good things for house

Here are some exercises based on the lesson on expressing permissions:

Exercise 1: Fill in the blanks

1. Can I _____ (go) to the movies tonight?
2. You _____ (can/can't) use your phone in the classroom.
3. My mom said I _____ (can/can't) go to the park alone.

Exercise 2: Choose the correct answer

1. Can you drink alcohol in a mosque?

- a) Yes, you can.
- b) No, you can't.
- c) Maybe, it depends.

2. Can a Moroccan citizen become the president of the USA?

- a) Yes, they can.
- b) No, they can't.
- c) Maybe, it depends.

3. Can you play football in the living room?

- a) Yes, you can.
- b) No, you can't.
- c) Maybe, it depends.

Exercise 3: Write your own sentences

1. Ask your friend for permission to _____.
2. Your mom said you _____ (can/can't) go to the party tonight.
3. You need to ask your teacher for permission to _____.

Exercise 4: Role-play

1. Ask your partner for permission to borrow their book.
2. Ask your partner if you can go to the bathroom.
3. Tell your partner that they cannot use their phone in the classroom.

Rule

Asking for permission

Can + Subject pronoun + verb

Accepting

Yes, you / he / she / they can

Refusing

No, you / he / she / they can't

Things I can do in the classroom

I can read – I can speak – I can exchange ideas

Things I can't do in the classroom

*I can't sleep – I can't listen to radio – I can't eat or drink –
I can't play football*

.....

permission

Can you put the words in the correct order to make a question?

1. go the to toilet can go I?.....Can I go to the toilet?
2. have please some can water I?
3. football we can now play?.....
4. cheese have can sandwich I a please?
5. outside we go can?
6. can pencil please I have a ?
7. please biscuit I can have a?
8. paper have some I can please?

match the questions to the pictures



Answer the questions? Yes I can or No I can't

1. Can you walk to school?
2. Can you go to discos?
3. Can you go to bed after 10 o' clock?
4. Can you watch television in the morning?
5. Can you have a tattoo?
6. Can you drink coke for breakfast?.....
7. Can you have a mobile phone?
8. Can you go to the beach alone?

CAN / CAN'T

I can go
you can go
he can go
she can go
it can go

I can't go
you can't go
he can't go
she can't go
it can't go

Can I go?
Can you go?
Can he go?
Can she go?
Can it go?

we can go
you can go
they can go

we can't go
you can't go
they can't go

Can we go?
Can you go?
Can they go?



Write negative and interrogative sentences:
She can play basketball.

I can drive a car.

They can run very fast.

He can ride a bike.

Put the words in the correct order:
can/French/and/I/speak/German

ride/she/a/can/horse

skate/ski/and/we/can

they/chess/play/can't

understand/you/Russian/can't

on/can't/I/my/walk/hands

drive/can/a/he/car?

you/two/languages/speak/foreign/can?

tennis/they/can/play?

Complete the sentences using can or can't:
Please help me. I solve this problem.

Jane has got a camera. She take our photo.

It's a lovely day. We go swimming.

They speak English quite well, but they write it.

We haven't got the keys. We open the door.

My dad speak three languages.

John is ill. He go out.

He's very young but he play computer games.

I always eat out because I cook.

My grandad read the newspaper because he hasn't got his glasses.

I'm sorry. I answer your question. I don't speak English.

I haven't got a ticket so I go to the match.

Sylvia works with computers. She type very fast.

You stay under water for twenty minutes! It's impossible.

He hasn't got her phone number so he phone her.

I'm sorry. I help you. I'm new here.

Mary hasn't got her guitar, so she play tonight. But she sing.

Request and Asking permission

1. Write the best option to request or ask permission, be careful with the usage of Can, Could or May.

- Tell your mom that you want to go out with your friends tonight.



- Ask your teacher that you want a drink of water.



- Tell your brother that you want the door opened.



- You say to a woman at the bus stop that you want to sit down.



CAN FOR PERMISSION OR REQUEST

STUDENT'S NAME: _____

A. Read the sentences. Do they talk about a permission or a request?

1. Can I turn on the TV? P
2. Can you pass me the sugar, please? _____
3. Can we play in the garden? _____
4. Can you turn off the radio? _____
5. Can you go to the shop for me? _____
6. Can we go out for dinner, Mum? _____

B. Write sentences to ask permission.

1. I / HAVE / AN APPLE / ?
CAN I HAVE AN APPLE?
2. I / TURN OFF / THE RADIO / ?

3. I / TAKE / THIS / PEN / ?

4. WE / TURN ON / THE DVD PLAYER / ?

5. I / GO TO / THE CINEMA / WITH SUSAN / ON SUNDAY, / MUM ?

6. I / TURN ON / THE PLAY STATION / ?

7. WE / BORROW / THESE BOOKS / ?

8. WE / PLAY TENNIS / THIS AFTERNOON, / DAD / ?

MAKING REQUESTS AND ASKING FOR PERMISSION

1. Read the conversations below and fill in the gaps with the words and phrases from the list.

Do you mind if	is it OK if	could you	What's the problem
here you are	telling me	thanks	Can I borrow
			go ahead

Conversation 1

A: Yeah?

B: Hello, []. turn the music down, please? It's one o'clock and I'm trying to sleep.

A: Oh, sorry. Is that better?

B: Yes, []. Perhaps I can get some sleep now. Good night.

Conversation 2

A: I'm sorry, []. I leave early today? I'm going to take my cat to see the vet.

B: You're going to take your cat to the vet? What's the matter with her then?

A: Him. I don't know. That's why I'm going to take him to the vet's.

B: Oh, I see. Sure, []. Thanks for [].

Conversation 3

A: David, do you have your mobile phone with you?

B: Um... yes. Why?

A: [] it, please? I need to make a quick call to my mother.

B: OK, [].

Conversation 4

A: [], we change seats?

B: Not happening []?

A: I can't see because of the sun.

B: Well, then... Why don't you sit there, next to Andrea.

Match the sentences (a-h) with the correct reactions (1-8).

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>a. Can I have a glass of water?</p> <p>b. Is it OK if I make a phone call?</p> <p>c. Could you say that again, please?</p> <p>d. Can I speak to you for a moment?</p> <p>e. Do you mind if I look at your project?</p> <p>f. Is it OK if I miss the English lesson tomorrow?</p> <p>g. Could you move over, please?</p> <p>h. Would you mind if I turn the TV up?</p> | <p>1. Yes of course. What about?</p> <p>2. Oh, sorry, I said we only have 500 tickets left.</p> <p>3. Well, all right. If it's a local call.</p> <p>4. Oh sure. The remote's on the table.</p> <p>5. Well, not really. Why can't you come?</p> <p>6. Of course, there's a bottle in the fridge.</p> <p>7. Be my guest. You can give me some feedback too.</p> <p>8. Yes, sorry. I didn't realise you wanted to sit down.</p> |
|--|--|

Can I ... ?

You want to go to the toilet.	You want the door to be opened.
You want to drink some cola.	You want to eat some sandwiches.
You want to borrow a book in the library.	You want to watch a horror.
You want to borrow a pen.	You want to use a calculator.
You want to sit in a different place.	You want to go skateboarding.
You want your brother/sister to turn down the music.	You want your mum to buy you a new piece of clothing.
You want say something in Polish.	You want the door to be closed.
You want the window to be opened.	You want the window to be closed.
You want your friend to repeat the sentence.	You want to go to the cinema with your friends.
You want your friend to help you with your homework.	You want to buy a new CD of your favourite group.
You want to use the computer.	You want to watch a DVD.
You want to go home early.	You want your class to be quiet.
You want to go to bed early.	You want to eat a cake.
You want your friend to come next to you.	You want to wash your hands.

Tenth lesson: Expressing Time

تعلم الأرقام باللغة الإنجليزية هو خطوة أساسية ومهمة. إليك الأرقام الأساسية وطريقة كتابتها ونطقها:

الأرقام الأساسية (0-20)

0	Zero	إيرو
1	One	ون
2	Two	تو
3	Three	ثري (مع إخراج اللسان عند نطق الثاء)
4	Four	فور
5	Five	فايف
6	Six	سكس
7	Seven	سفن
8	Eight	إيت
9	Nine	ناين
10	Ten	تن
11	Eleven	إليفن
12	Twelve	تويلف
13	Thirteen	ثيرتين
14	Fourteen	فورتين
15	Fifteen	فيفتين
16	Sixteen	سكستين
17	Seventeen	سفنتين
18	Eighteen	إيتين
19	Nineteen	ناينتين
20	Twenty	توينتي

العشرات (20-100)

20	Twenty	توينتي
30	Thirty	ثيرتي
40	Forty	فورتى
50	Fifty	فيفتي
60	Sixty	سكستي
70	Seventy	سفنتي
80	Eighty	إيتي
90	Ninety	ناينتي
100	One Hundred	ون هندرد

تكوين الأرقام المركبة (21-99)

لتكوين الأرقام بين العشرات، نستخدم اسم العشرة متبوعاً بشرطة صغيرة (-) ثم رقم الآحاد.

* 21: Twenty-one

* 35: Thirty-five

* 99: Ninety-nine

الأرقام الكبيرة

100 | One Hundred | وَنْ هَندرد |

1,000 | One Thousand | وَنْ ثَاوَزَند |

1,000,000 | One Million | وَنْ مِلْيُون |

1,000,000,000 | One Billion | وَنْ بِلْيُون |

مثال على رقم كبير:

543,210

يُقرأ

: Five hundred forty-three thousand, two hundred ten.

(نقرأ المئات ثم الآلاف ثم ننتقل إلى المئات والآحاد المتبقية).

نصائح سريعة للمذاكرة:

* التركيز على (13-19): لاحظ أن معظم هذه الأرقام تنتهي باللاحقة  teen.

* التمييز بين (teen) و (ty): المراهقون (teenagers) أعمارهم تنتهي بـ (teen) مثل 15 (Fifteen)، بينما العشرات تنتهي بـ (ty) مثل 50 (Fifty).

* الممارسة: حاول عد الأشياء من حولك بصوت عال بالإنجليزية.

هل ترغب في المزيد من التدريب على أرقام محددة أو كيفية استخدامها في جمل؟ 

Quote مقولة

the time like sword if you don't cut it then it will cut you

Meaning is :

You should use your time in reaching your goals

Telling the time



2:00 - It's two **o'clock**.

2:05 - It's five **past** two.

2:10 - It's ten **past** two.

2:15 - It's quarter **past** two.

2:20 - It's twenty **past** two.

2:25 - It's twenty-five **past** two.

2:30 - It's half **past** two.

2:35 - It's twenty-five **to** three.

2:40 - It's twenty **to** three.

2:45 - It's quarter **to** three.

2:50 - It's ten **to** three.

2:55 - It's five **to** three.

We use AT + TIME when giving the time of a specific event.

- The class starts at nine o'clock.
- The flight leaves at ten to three.

We use IT IS or IT'S to answer a question that asks for the time right now.

- What time is it? - It is half past four.
What's the time? - It's twenty to five.

04 : 00
It's four o'clock

04 : 05
It's five past four

04 : 08
It's eight past four

04 : 10
It's ten past four

04 : 12
It's twelve past four

04 : 15
It's a quarter past four

04 : 22
It's twenty-two past four

04 : 25
It's twenty-five past four.

04 : 30
It's half past four

04 : 35
It's twenty-five to five

04 : 40
It's twenty to five

04 : 45
It's a quarter to five

04 : 50
It's ten to five

04 : 55
It's five to to five

05 : 00
It's five o'clock

daily activities by asking on the time

أنشطة اليومية

- 1)- what time do you wake up ? I Wake up at half past 7.
- 2)-What time do you have breakfast? I have breakfast at 8 o'clock.
- 3)-What hat time do you go. go to School? I go to school at 20 past 8.
- 4)- what time do you come back at home? I come back at home at 20 to 7.
- 5)- what time do you have dinner? I have dinner at 11 o'clock.
- 6). What time do you sleep? I Sleep at half part 2.

Sample Communication of the time:

A- Excuse me, what time is it?

B - it is quarter past 4. *4:15*

A - thank you

Some useful expressions:

What's the time What time is it

Excuse me. What time is it please

Excuse me. Do you have the time please

Excuse me. Could you tell me the time please

Can you tell me the time, please

Can you tell me what time it is

Excuse me. Do you happen to know what time it is

Do you have the time

Would you happen to know what time it is

Meaning of PM and AM in the time

It's midday: 12:00 Pm

it's noon : 12.00 Pm

it's midnight : 12:00 Am

AM : 12.00 ليلا الى 11.59 صباحا

2. PM : 12.00 نهارا الى 11.59 ليلا

What is date today?

it is monday, march, 20th 2025.

It is tuesday, march, 21st 2025,

it's Wednesday, march 22nd 2025,

it's Thursday march 23rd 2025,

it's Friday, march 24th 2025.

it's Saturday, march 26th 2025

it's Sunday, march 27th 2025.

Ordinal numbers

1st first	11th eleventh	21st twenty-first
2nd second	12th twelfth	30th thirtieth
3rd third	13th thirteenth	40th fortieth
4th Fourth	14th fourteenth	50th fiftieth
5th fifth	15 th fifteenth	60th sixtieth
6th sixth	16th sixteenth	70th seventieth
7th seventh	17th seventeenth	80th eightieth
8th eighth	18th eighteenth	90th ninetieth
9th ninth	19th nineteenth	100th one hundredth
10th tenth	20th twentieth	1000th one thousandth

Months

- 3- January
- 4- February
- 5- March
- 6- April
- 7- May
- 8- June
- 9- July
- 10- August
- 11- September
- 12- October
- 13- November
- 14- December

The Seasons

Spring:

March
April
May

Summer:

June
July
August

Autumn:

September
October
November

Winter:

December
January
February

Exercise 1:

- What time do you go to the gym?

.....

- What time do you have lunch?

.....

- What time do you go to the movies?

.....

***EXERCISE 2 in Sample Communication of the time: ***

A- Excuse me, what time is it?

B - it is *4:55*

A - thank you

EXERCISE 3 Meaning of PM and AM in the time

It's midday: 12:00

it's noon : 12.00

it's midnight : 12:00

AM : 12.00 الى 11.59

PM :12.00 الى 11.59

EXERCISE 4: *What is date today?*

it is

It is

it's

it's

it's

it's

it's

WHAT TIME IS IT?

Look at the time and draw the clock hands on the clocks below. Then write the time in the blank space.



3:00



2:00



4:00



8:00



5:00



1:00



12:00



7:00



6:00



11:00



10:00



9:00

Telling Time

to the quarter hour

Write in the minute and hour hands on each clock.



4:15



11:45



3:15



3:45



12:30



8:15



7:00



2:15



9:45



Telling Time

to the quarter hour

Write in the minute and hour hands on each clock.



4:15



11:45



3:15



3:45



12:30



8:15



7:00



2:15



9:45



The time

Match the times.



11.45

It's two o'clock.



11.30

It's seven o'clock.



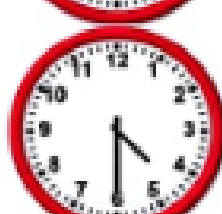
4.30

It's half past eleven.



1.45

It's quarter to twelve.



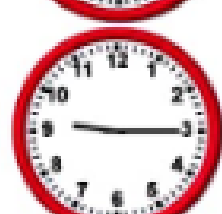
2.00

It's quarter past five.



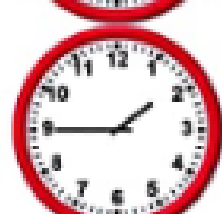
5.15

It's half past four.



7.00

It's quarter to two.



9.15

It's quarter past nine.

What time is it?



5-WRITING: JOURNEY IN MARKET TRADITIONNAL

**Every day I go to market for shopping about I cook Lunch After
that I reach to market and I go to grocery and i take basket and I choose
fresh vegetable and Fruit and i ask seller about prices:**

"Buyer: hello, how much weight is this Basket?"

Seller: this basket is 10 kg

buyer: How much are these vegetable and fruit?

Seller: These vegetable and fruit are 100 DHs"

Buyer: thank you.

Seller: welcome.

After that I go to boulanger to buy some breads;

Buyer: hi, how much is luxe bread.

Seller: two dhs for one luxe bread, how many luxe bread do you want?

Buyer: I want 3 luxe breads. How much are 3 luxe breads?

Seller: 3 luxe breads are 9 dhs.

Buyer: thank you.

Seller: welcome.

And in Same thing I buy meat and other thing like spices and I come
Back to my house for cooking lunch.

6-WRITING: REQUESTS

PERMISSION

write permission letterhead رسالة رسمية to administration to company about increasing your salary because you get doctoral and you work so hard and you are reason in successful business'

company

requests permission beginning and intermediate: *

1. Beginning writing*

Letterhead for request permission

CASABLANCA 27/02/2025

From Safae bongar

Street derb sultan

0628279161

Houssam235@gmail.com

To director of company iimira mr. Iimira houssam

Subject: request permission to increase my salary.

Dear director

I am writting this letterhead request permission to increase my Salary in my Job manager of section quality of products because:

1. make company income benefits business
2. I work more than time existing in contract
3. I get new diplomat's master manager companies.

And important you know I have offer From other companies competition. to your company in Same field, please I want to meet you sooner.

I wish to accept request permission.

thank you
to you All respect

~_Safae bongar_~

2. Intermediate writing*

Letterhead request permission increase salary

CASABLANCA, 27/02/2025

Safae Bongar
Derb Sultan, Street
0628279161
Houssam235@gmail.com

Director of Company Iimira
Mr. Iimira Houssam

Subject: Request permission for Salary Increase

Dear Director,

I am writing to respectfully request permission a salary increase, considering my role as Manager of the Quality Products Section. The reasons for this request are:

1. My contributions have significantly benefited the company's income and business growth.
2. I have consistently worked beyond the contracted hours, demonstrating my dedication and commitment to the company.
3. I have recently obtained a Master's degree in Management, enhancing my skills and qualifications.

Additionally, I have received offers from competing companies in the same field, which has prompted me to request this salary increase. I would appreciate the opportunity to discuss this matter further with you and explore possibilities for growth within the company.

Thank you for considering my request permission. I look forward to your response.

Sincerely,

~*Safae Bongar*~

7-Writing: Eating Habits.

I eat bread with olive oil or jam and I drink some powdered milk or tea with mint for breakfast. For lunch, I eat cucumber salad and beef tajine and I drink a cup of banana juice. I eat fried eggs or a bowl of rice and I drink a milkshake for dinner

I like fresh fish and green tea very much. I dislike sausages and black coffee

Some useful expressions

I'm hungry

I'm thirsty

Let's go and have some drink
Can

you recommend a good
restaurant

What would you like to eat /
drink?

Would you like some orange
juice?

What about some cakes

May I have the menu; please

I'd like the bill, please

Keep the change

That's not what I ordered

May I change this

What kind of seafood do you
have?

What kind of meat do you
have?

What kind of poultry dishes
do you serve?

Can I get you a drink?

Food and Drink: Vocabulary : Fruits



Melon



Orange



Grapes



Watermelon



Apple



Lemon



Banana



Peach



Apricot



Pear



Strawberry



Cherry



Fig



Pineapple



Plum



Avocado



Pomegranate



Date

Food and Drink: Vocabulary Vegetables



Onion



Carrot



Potato



Tomato



Turnip



Cabbage



Cauliflower



Lettuce



Peas



Beans



Pepper



Pumpkin



Radish



Eggplant / Aubergine



Garlic



Cucumber



Brocoli



Mushroom



Zucchini / Courgette



Spinach



Beet / Beetroot



Celery



Sweet potato / Yam



Green onion



Corn



Artichoke

Food and Drink: Vocabulary: Drinks



Milk



Water



Coffee



Orange Juice

Orange Juice



Tea



Soup



Lemonade / Soft drink

Food and Drink: Vocabulary : Other Types of Food



Egg



Fried eggs



Bread



Rice



Cheese



Salad



Hotdog



Sandwich



Candies / Sweets



Big mac



French fries



Pizza



Sugar



Honey



Jam



Butter



Popcorn



Ketchup



chocolate



Cake



Ice cream



Spaghetti / Noodles



Flour



Muffin



Potato chips or crisps

Food and Drink: Vocabulary : Spices



Parsley



Coriander



Cumin



Paprika



Cinnamon Powder



Turmeric



Black pepper



Ginger



Saffron



Salt

1-Reading small story

for clients shop from sellers in market
traditional Moroccan, she shops
vegetables and fruits about guests
coming to her. *

Here's a text describing clients shopping from a seller in a traditional Moroccan market:

As the sun rises over the vibrant streets of Marrakech, the traditional Moroccan market comes alive. Amidst the bustling stalls, a client approaches a colorful vegetable and fruit stand.

"Assalamu alaikum," the client greets the seller, a warm smile spreading across her face.

"Wa alaikum salam," the seller responds, welcoming the client to her stand.

"What can I help you find today?"

The client scans the vibrant display, taking in the array of fresh produce. "I'll take some tomatoes, please," she requests, pointing to a basket of juicy red tomatoes.

The seller expertly selects a few of the freshest tomatoes and hands them to the client. "Would you like some oranges as well?" she suggests, holding up a few of the juiciest oranges.

The client nods, and the seller adds the oranges to her bag. "How much do I owe you?" the client asks.

The seller smiles, calculating the total. "That will be 50 dirhams, please."

The client hands over the payment, and the seller thanks her, handing her a few fresh mint leaves as a gift. "Shukraan, come back soon!" she says, bidding the client farewell.

As the client walks away, the seller greets the next customer, ready to share her fresh produce and warm hospitality with the next person to visit her stand.

8-Writing: Dream house *

This is my dream house. It's in Tangier. There are three large bedrooms, two nice living rooms, a lovely dining room, a modern kitchen, a new bathroom and beautiful garden. I like my dream house very much because there is a wonderful swimming pool and a wide courtyard.

Vocabulary: Parts of a house; Bedroom

Bed



Bedside table



Bedside lamp



Wardrobe / closet



Alarm clock



Window



Matress



Pillow



Blanket



chest of drawers



Bedspread



Vocabulary: Parts of a house; Bathroom

Bidet



Towel rail



Sponge bag



Washbasin



Bath mat



Soap



Toilet paper



Soap dish



Tap



Toilet



Towel



Mirror



Comb



Towel rail



Hair drier



Shampoo



Conditioner



Safety razor / shaver



Electric razor / electric shave



Shaving foam



Hair brush



Toothpaste



Toothbrush



Nail brush



shower



Bath



Vocabulary: Parts of a house; kitchen

Fridge / Freezer / Refrigerator



Oven



Microwave oven



Stove / Cooker



Washing machine



Toaster



Kettle



Teapot



Coffee pot



Liquidizer / Blender



Mixer



Broom



Sink



Waste bin



Worktop



Tea towel



Saucepan



Frying pan



Pressure cooker



cup and saucer



spoon



Fork



Tin opener



Knife



Teaspoon



Cutlery drawer



Glass



Jug



Vocabulary: Parts of a house; Living room/ Sitting room

Table



chair



Armchair



Sofa



Rug



Carpet



Fireplace



Radiator



Television



Vocabulary: Parts of a house; Houses

A house



A cottage



A tree house



A palace



A temple



A barn



A hut



A tent



A villa



A bungalow



A teepee



An igloo



A block of flats



A castle



A skyscraper



THIRD LEVEL

Eleventh lesson 11: Present Continuous Positive / Negative / interrogation

The present continuous describes **things that are happening now, at the moment or future plans and arrangements**

Common present continuous time expressions include

at the moment, now, today, this week, this month, tomorrow, next week (for future arrangements), currently

Rule

Verb to be (in simple present) + verb + ing

1. positive / Affirmative

I'm playing Football now.

you are playing football this week.

he is playing Football this month

She is playing Football moments

it is playing Football Sometimes

we are playing Football this time.

you are playing football next week

they are playing Football Right now.

2. Negative: *

I'm not playing Football now.

you are not playing football this week.

he is not playing Football this month

she is not playing Football moments.

it is not playing Football Sometimes

we are not playing Football this time.

you are not playing Football next week

they are not playing Football Right now

***3. Interrogation: ***

am I playing Football now?

yes, you're / no you are not

are you playing football this week?

yes, i'm / no, I'm not.

is he playing football now?

Yes, he is /no he is not

is She playing Football these moments?

Yes, she is / no she is not

is it playing Football sometimes?

Yes, it is /no it is not

are we playing Football this time?

yes, you are / no you are not

are you playing Football now?

yes, we are / no, we are not.

are they playing football right now?

Yes, they are / no they are not

4. different between present Simple and present countinuous

1. Present simple

I go to school every day

بشكل منتظم و اعتيادي

2.Present continuous

I'm going to paris now

بشكل الحالي و متقطع و محدد

5. Going to نتيجة حتمية

1.Going to (SO)

المعطيات:

present Simple

I work hard in my school and I get good marks in Subject School and my teachers Support me.

نتيجة:

SO

present continuous

"is going to"

1-I'm going to Succeed in my school by excellant mark and by additional

2-I'm going to be Frist Rink in my classroom.

2 . Going to (because)

*Sentence Present continuous (to be going to) +
because + sentence present simple*

1 . I'm going to paris because i love this beautiful city

2 . I'm going to work hard because i want to finish many order's clients

EXERCISES in Present Continuous:

Present Continuous Positive and Negative Form 1

Make the present continuous.

1. (he / walk to school now)

2. (I / study at the moment)

3. (I / not / sleep)

4. (you / play badminton tonight)

5. (we / watch TV)

6. (she / not / work in Spain)

7. (he / not / wait for the bus)

8. (they / read)

9. (we / not / go to the cinema tonight)

10. (you / not / read the newspaper)

11. (she / eat chocolate)

12. (I / not / live in Paris)

13. (we / study French)

14. (they / not / leave now)

15. (they / live in London)

16.(he / work in a restaurant now)

17.(I / not / meet my father at four)

18.(she / not / drink tea now)

19.(she / play the guitar)

20.(we / cook)

Answers

1. He's walking to school now.
2. I'm studying at the moment.
3. I'm not sleeping.
4. You're playing badminton tonight.
5. We're watching TV.
6. She isn't working in Spain.
7. He isn't waiting for the bus.
8. They're reading.
9. We aren't going to the cinema tonight.
10. You aren't reading the newspaper.
11. She's eating chocolate.
12. I'm not living in Paris.
13. We're studying French.
14. They aren't leaving now.
15. They're living in London.
16. He's working in a restaurant now.
17. I'm not meeting my father at four.
18. She isn't drinking tea now.
19. She's playing the guitar.
20. We're cooking.

Present Continuous Positive and Negative 2

Make the present continuous.

1. (they / not / visit their parents)

2. (he / meet his friend tonight)

3. (he / not / walk to school now)

4. (we / not / watch TV at the moment)

5. (you / not / read a book)

6. (I / visit Linda tonight)

7. (she / not / eat dinner now)

8. (Lucy / not / work in a bookshop this summer)

9. (they / watch a film)

10.(we / buy a new car)

11.(David / have a party tomorrow)

12.(I / get a bike)

13.(you / take a long time)

14.(I / not / come until later)

15.(Jill and Susan / walk)

16.(we / not / listen to the radio)

17.(they / not / speak to each other)

18.(he / take a shower)

19.(you / get fat)

20.(I / not / use the computer)

Answers

1. They're not visiting their parents.
2. He's meeting his friend tonight.
3. He isn't walking to school now.
4. We aren't watching TV at the moment.
5. You aren't reading a book.
6. I'm visiting Linda tonight.
7. She isn't eating dinner now.
8. Lucy isn't working in a bookshop this summer.
9. They're watching a film.
10. We're buying a new car.
11. David's having a party tomorrow.
12. I'm getting a bike.
13. You're taking a long time.
14. I'm not coming until later.
15. Jill and Susan are walking.
16. We aren't listening to the radio.
17. They aren't speaking to each other.
18. He's taking a shower.
19. You're getting fat.
20. I'm not using the computer.

Present Continuous Questions 1

Make present continuous questions (yes / no and 'wh-').

1. (what time / you / go to the cinema?)

2. (why / you / study?)

3. (when / you / leave?)

4. (you / smoke?)

5. (he / play / tennis later?)

6. (you / go / shopping at the weekend?)

7. (you / drink / wine)

8. (what / you / drink now?)

9. (what / you / think?)

10. (she / work / in an office at the moment?)

11. (they / study / Portuguese?)

12. (what time / she / come?)

13. (where / you / play tennis tonight?)

14. (you / meet / your friends on Friday?)

15. (you / read / now?)

16. (where / you / go now?)

17. (what / you / do?)

18. (she / live / in London?)

19. (they / study now?)

20. (you / eat / cake?)

Answers

1. Are you eating cake?
2. What time are you going to the cinema?
3. Why are you studying?
4. When are you leaving?
5. Are you smoking?
6. Is he playing tennis later?
7. Are you going shopping at the weekend?
8. Are you drinking wine?
9. What are you drinking now?
10. What are you thinking?
11. Is she working in an office at the moment?
12. Are they studying Portuguese?
13. What time is she coming?
14. Where are you playing tennis tonight?
15. Are you meeting your friends on Friday?
16. Are you reading now?
17. Where are you going now?
18. What are you doing?
19. Is she living in London?
20. Are they studying now?

Present Continuous Questions 2

Make the present continuous ('yes / no' or 'wh' questions).

1. (how long / you / stay in Paris?)

2. (you / drink / tea ?)

3. (where / you / stay?)

4. (why / you / watch TV now?)

5. (she / work in a bar?)

6. (what / he / do?)

7. (why / she / call her friend now?)

8. (I / lose weight?)

9. (we / work tomorrow?)

10. (when / you / arrive?)

11. (he / take dance classes?)

12. (she / stay in a hotel?)

13. (how much / he / eat?)

14. (how long / you / stay in China?)

15. (she / study in the library now?)

16. (you / come?)

17. (they / rent a car?)

18. (when / they / have a barbeque?)

19. (what / Julie / do tonight?)

20. (you / feel sleepy?)

Answers

1. How long are you staying in Paris?
2. Are you drinking tea?
3. Where are you staying?
4. Why are you watching TV now?
5. Is she working in a bar?
6. What is he doing?
7. Why is she calling her friend now?
8. Am I losing weight?
9. Are we working tomorrow?
10. When are you arriving?
11. Is he taking dance classes?
12. Is she staying in a hotel?
13. How much is he eating?
14. How long are you staying in China?
15. Is she studying in the library now?
16. Are you coming?
17. Are they renting a car?
18. When are they having a barbeque?
19. What is Julie doing tonight?
20. Are you feeling sleepy?

Present Continuous All Forms Exercise 1

Make the present continuous. You can use the short form or the longer form. For example, 'she is'.

1. (she / go home now)

2. (I / read a great book)

3. (she / not / wash her hair)

4. (the cat / chase mice?)

5. (she / cry?)

6. (he / not / study Latin)

7. (we / drive to London?)

8. (they / watch TV?)

9. (where / she / go now?)

10. (I / not / leave now)

11. (you / not / run)

12. (why / he / leave?)

13. (how / I / travel?)

14. (it / not / rain)

15. (when / we / arrive?)

16. (where / they / stay?)

17. (it / rain)

18. (she / come at six)

19. (he / watch a film at the moment)

20. (we / not / sleep)

Answers

You can use the short form or the longer form. For example, 'she's' or 'she is'.

1. She's going home now.
2. I'm reading a great book.
3. She isn't washing her hair.
4. Is the cat chasing mice?
5. Is she crying?
6. He isn't studying Latin.
7. Are we driving to London?
8. Are they watching TV?
9. Where is she going now?
10. I'm not leaving now.
11. You aren't running.
12. Why is he leaving?
13. How am I travelling?
14. It isn't raining.
15. When are we arriving?
16. Where are they staying?
17. It's raining.
18. She's coming at six.
19. He's watching a film at the moment.
20. We aren't sleeping.

Present Continuous All Forms Exercise 2

Make the present continuous. You can use the short form or the longer form. For example, 'she's' or 'she is'.

1. (we / go to the cinema later)

2. (they / work now)

3. (you / not / walk)

4. (they / learn new things?)

5. (when / he / start work?)

6. (why / I / stay at home?)

7. (it / get dark?)

8. (we / not / win)

9. (they / not / bring a cake)

10. (the dog / not / play with a ball)

11. (why / it / rain now?)

12. (how / she / travel?)

13. (where / you / work?)

14. (what / we / watch?)

15. (you / meet your friend at four)

16. (I / take too much cake?)

17. (you / think?)

18. (we / study this evening)

19. (Lucy and Steve / play the piano)

20. (Sarah / not / tell a story)

Answers

1. We're going to the cinema later.
2. They're working now.
3. You aren't walking.
4. Are they learning new things?
5. When is he starting work?
6. Why am I staying at home?
7. Is it getting dark?
8. We aren't winning.
9. They aren't bringing a cake.
10. The dog isn't playing with a ball.
11. Why is it raining now?
12. How is she coming?
13. Where are you working?
14. What are we watching?
15. You're meeting your friend at four.
16. Am I taking too much cake?
17. Are you thinking?
18. We're studying this evening
19. Lucy and Steve are playing the piano.
20. Sarah isn't telling a story.

Present Simple or Present Continuous? Exercise 3

Choose the present simple or the present continuous. Watch out for stative verbs.

1. Julie _____ (read) in the garden.
2. What _____ (we / have) for dinner tonight?
3. She _____ (have) two daughters.
4. I _____ (stay) in Spain for two weeks this summer.
5. He often _____ (come) over for dinner.
6. The class _____ (begin) at nine every day.
7. What _____ (you / eat) at the moment?
8. What _____ (Susie / do) tomorrow?
9. I _____ (not / work) on Sundays.
10. She _____ (not / study) now, she _____ (watch) TV.
11. How often _____ (you / go) to restaurants?
12. I _____ (not / go) on holiday this summer.
13. I'm sorry, I _____ (not / understand).
14. She _____ (work) as a waitress for a month.
15. She _____ (take) a salsa dancing class every Tuesday.
16. It _____ (be) cold here in winter.
17. Take your umbrella, it _____ (rain).
18. This cake _____ (taste) delicious.
19. The bag _____ (belong) to Jack.
20. When _____ (you / arrive) tonight?

Answer

1. Julie is reading in the garden.
2. What are we having for dinner tonight?
3. She has two daughters.
4. I'm staying in Spain for two weeks this summer.
5. He often comes over for dinner.
6. The class begins at nine every day.
7. What are you eating at the moment?
8. What is Susie doing tomorrow?
9. I don't work on Sundays.
10. She isn't studying now, she's watching TV.
11. How often do you go to restaurants?
12. I'm not going on holiday this summer.
13. I'm sorry, I don't understand.
14. She is working as a waitress for a month.
15. She takes a salsa dancing class every Tuesday.
16. It's cold here in winter.
17. Take your umbrella, it's raining.
18. This cake tastes delicious.
19. The bag belongs to Jack.
20. When are you arriving tonight?

twelfth lesson 12: Present Perfect

Positive / Negative / interrogation

ما هو present perfect ؟

present perfect - هو زمن في اللغة الإنجليزية يستخدم لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لها تأثير على الحاضر.
-يستخدم الفعل المساعد "have" أو "has" في present perfect.

قواعد: present perfect
-الفعل المساعد "have" أو "has" يأتي في بداية الجملة.
-الفعل الرئيسي يأتي في صيغة الماضي البسيط. (past participle)
-يمكن استخدام "haven't" أو "hasn't" لوصف عدم حدوث شيء ما في الماضي.

أمثلة على: present perfect

- I have eaten breakfast. (لقد أكلت الإفطار)
- She has studied English for three years. (لقد درست اللغة الإنجليزية لمدة ثلاث سنوات)
- They haven't arrived yet. (لم يصلوا بعد)
- I have never been to Paris. (لم أذهب إلى باريس من قبل)

استخدامات: present perfect

- لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لها تأثير على الحاضر.
- لوصف الأحداث التي بدأت في الماضي وتستمر في الحاضر.
- لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لا تزال لها تأثير على الحاضر.

الفرق بين present perfect و past simple

- present perfect -يستخدم لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لها تأثير على الحاضر.
- past simple -يستخدم لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي فقط.

ملخص:

present perfect - هو زمن في اللغة الإنجليزية يستخدم لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لها تأثير على الحاضر.
-يستخدم الفعل المساعد "have" أو "has" في present perfect.
-يمكن استخدام "haven't" أو "hasn't" لوصف عدم حدوث شيء ما في الماضي.

Rule

Affirmative/ positive sentences in present perfect

I / you / we / they + have got

He / she / it + has got.....

ما هو past participle ؟

"past participle" - هو مصطلح يستخدم لوصف الفعل الذي يأتي بعد الفعل المساعد "have" أو "had" في الجمل التي تستخدم في الزمن الماضي أو الزمن الحاضر التام.
- الأفعال في فئة "past participle" هي أفعال تم تعديلها لوصف الماضي.

#أمثلة على: past participle

- الفعل "go" يصبح "gone" في فئة "past participle".
- الفعل "take" يصبح "taken" في فئة "past participle".
- الفعل "get" يصبح "got" أو "gotten" في فئة "past participle".

#استخدام got في

past participle in present perfect:

- الفعل "got" يستخدم في فئة "past participle" لوصف الماضي،
present perfect - هو زمن في اللغة الإنجليزية يستخدم لوصف الأحداث التي حدثت في الماضي ولكن لها تأثير على الحاضر.
مثل:

- I have got a car. (لقد حصلت على سيارة)
- She has got a new job. (لقد حصلت على وظيفة جديدة)

#الفرق بين got و gotten:

- الفعل "got" يستخدم في فئة "past participle" في اللغة الإنجليزية البريطانية.
- الفعل "gotten" يستخدم في فئة "past participle" في اللغة الإنجليزية الأمريكية.

#ملخص:

- الفعل "got" هو مصنف في فئة "past participle" في اللغة الإنجليزية.
- الأفعال في فئة "past participle" هي أفعال تم تعديلها لوصف الماضي.
- الفعل "got" يستخدم في فئة "past participle" لوصف الماضي.

Rule

Negative sentences in present perfect

I / you / we / they + haven't got (have not got).....

He / she / it + hasn't got (has not got).....

جملة "I haven't got" هي جملة استخدمها الناطقون بالإنجليزية للتعبير عن عدم امتلاك شيء ما. إليك شرحاً مفصلاً لهذه الجملة:

الجملة "I haven't got" هي جملة تستخدم في الزمن الحاضر التام (Present Perfect) في اللغة الإنجليزية.

"haven't" - هي صيغة الماضي البسيط للفعل "have" ، وتعني "لم أمتلك" أو "لم أكن أمتلك".
"got" - هي الفعل "get" في صيغة الماضي البسيط، وتعني "حصلت على" أو "امتلك".

#معنى الجملة:

- الجملة "I haven't got" تعني "ليس لدي" أو "لم أمتلك".
- يمكن استخدام هذه الجملة لوصف عدم امتلاك شيء ما، مثل:

- I haven't got a car. (ليس لدي سيارة)
- I haven't got any money. (ليس لدي أي مال)
- I haven't got a phone. (ليس لدي هاتف)

#أمثلة إضافية:

- I haven't got time to watch TV. (ليس لدي وقت لمشاهدة التلفزيون)
- I haven't got enough money to buy a new car. (ليس لدي ما يكفي من المال لشراء سيارة جديدة)
- I haven't got a job yet. (ليس لدي وظيفة بعد)

#قواعد إضافية:

- يمكن استخدام "haven't" مع الفعل "got" لوصف عدم امتلاك شيء ما في الماضي.
- يمكن استخدام "haven't" مع الأفعال الأخرى لوصف عدم القيام بشيء ما في الماضي.
- يمكن استخدام "got" في صيغة الماضي البسيط لوصف الحصول على شيء ما في الماضي.

#الفرق بين "I haven't got" و: "I don't have"

"I haven't got" - هي جملة تستخدم في الزمن الحاضر التام، وتعني "ليس لدي" أو "التام أمتلك".
"I don't have" - هي جملة تستخدم في الزمن الحاضر البسيط، وتعني "ليس لدي" أو "لا أمتلك".

Rule

Interrogation Yes / no questions in present perfect

Have + I / you / we / they + got.....?

Has + he / she / it + got.....?

Examples

1/ Have you got black socks ?
No, I haven't.

2/ Has Samir got blue eyes?
Yes, he has.

3/ Has Karima got a white skirt?
No, she hasn't.

4/ Have they got green eyes?
No, they haven't.

5/ Has your cat got small ears?
Yes, it has.

6/ Have you got long feet?
No, I haven't.

7/ Has Rachid got white pants?
Yes, he has.

8/ Has Mounir got a beard?
No, he hasn't.

9/ Has your sister got a long hair?
Yes, she has.

10/ Have you got a brown jacket?
Yes, I have.

CONCLUSION

1. Positive

Got = gotten : past participant

I have got bacculaureate

You have got bacculaureate

He has got bacculaureate

She has got bacculaureate

It has got bacculaureate

We have got bacculaureate

You have got bacculaureate

They have got bacculaureate

**2. Negative*

I haven't worked in company

You haven't worked in company

He hasn't worked in company

She hasn't worked in company

It hasn't worked in company

We haven't worked in company

You haven't worked in company

They have never been in Paris

3. Interrogation

Have you traveled to Germany?

Yes i have

No i haven't

Have i got money from bank CIH ?

Yes you have

No you haven't

Has she started working in
Michigan?

Yes she has

No she hasn't

Has he gone to hospital?

Yes he has

No she hasn't

Has cat eaten its food ?

Yes it has

No it hasn't

Have we got black house ?

Yes you have

No you haven't

Have you played in Stadium big
TANGER?

Yes we have

No we haven't

Have they reached to moon ?

Yes they have

No they haven't

Have got/ has got

1. I _____ a dog.
2. He _____ a house.
3. They _____ a cat.
4. She _____ a book.
5. You _____ good friends.
6. We _____ a computer.
7. Jane _____ a nice table.
8. My brother _____ two robots.
9. John and Jane _____ a brother.
10. Mr Black _____ a new car.
11. Bill and I _____ blue pens.
12. My sisters _____ nice pictures.
13. The girls _____ dolls.
14. The girl _____ a doll.
15. She _____ a car.
16. He _____ a pen.
17. We _____ a dictionary.
18. They _____ a marker.
19. Peter and Jane _____ a book.
20. Jane _____ a clock.
21. Peter _____ new boots.

HAVE GOT / HAS GOT

1. Mary a blue bag.
2. I three pencils and two pens.
3. My sister a cat.
4. My friends a new computer game.
5. Mrs Brown a beautiful dress.
6. You a nice smile.
7. Amy and I new CDs.
8. Tom a hamster.
9. You a nice T-shirt.
10. My brother a red bike.

1 Use the words in the box to complete the dialogues.



Has your brother got	Has your granny got	Have I got
Have you got	Have they got	Have we got

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 A: <u>Have you got</u> my book? | B: No, I haven't. |
| 2 A: _____ homework today? | B: Yes, we have. |
| 3 A: _____ your schoolbag? | B: Yes, he has. |
| 4 A: _____ cool hair? | B: Yes, they have. |
| 5 A: _____ long legs? | B: No, you haven't. |
| 6 A: _____ a dog? | B: No, she hasn't. |

2 Complete the questions with have or has. Write short answers.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 A: <u>Have</u> we got an English lesson today? | 4 A: _____ your phone got a new battery? |
| B: <u>Yes, we have.</u> ✓ | B: _____ X |
| 2 A: _____ you got my DVD? | 5 A: _____ mum got my top? |
| B: _____ ✓ | B: _____ ✓ |
| 3 A: _____ they got big eyes? | 6 A: _____ he got my book? |
| B: _____ X | B: _____ X |





3 Draw a line to match 1-6 to a-f.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 1 My school is small. | a Their cat isn't happy! |
| 2 These are my cats. | b Its name is Terry. |
| 3 We've got an English lesson today. | c Their names are Jan and Jay. |
| 4 My classroom is 5A. | d Your classroom is 5B. |
| 5 My neighbour's dog is black. | e Our teacher is cool. |
| 6 My grandparents have got three dogs. | f Your school is big. |

4 Write questions. Then in pairs, take turns to ask and answer. Circle your partner's answers.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| 1 you / a cat? | <u>Have you got a cat?</u> | Yes / No |
| 2 you / a sister? | _____ | Yes / No |
| 3 you / long hair? | _____ | Yes / No |
| 4 mum / brown eyes? | _____ | Yes / No |
| 5 sister / curly hair? | _____ | Yes / No |
| 6 you / game console? | _____ | Yes / No |



Have you got a cat?

Yes, I have. I've got three cats!



Present Perfect Simple

Make positive present perfect sentences.

1. (I / study / French)

2. (She / eat / octopus)

3. (They / go / to Scotland)

4. (We / read / that book)

5. (He / live / here for three years)

6. (You / know / David for ten years)

7. (We / be / here for two weeks)

8. (I / lose / my keys)

9. (He / drink / too much coffee)

10. (They / miss / the train)

11. (We / eat / too much chocolate)

12. (I / have / breakfast this morning)

13. (John / miss / the train)

14. (Lucy / cook / breakfast)

15. (They / write / to the politician)

16. (You / find / your wallet)

17. (I / meet / his mother)

18. (We / try / roller-skating)

19. (She / pass / the exam)

:

Answers

1. I have studied French.
2. She has eaten octopus.
3. They have been / gone to Scotland.
4. We have read that book.
5. He has lived here for three years.
6. You have known David for ten years.
7. We have been here for two weeks.
8. I have lost my keys.
9. He has drunk too much coffee.
10. They have missed the train.
11. She has been / gone to Peru.
12. We have eaten too much chocolate.
13. I have had breakfast this morning.
14. John has missed the train.
15. Lucy has cooked breakfast.
16. They have written to the politician.
17. You have found your wallet.
18. I have met his mother.
19. We have tried roller-skating.
20. She has passed the exam.

Present Perfect Simple

Make negative present perfect sentences.

1. (We / not / go / to Paris)

2. (She / not / see / 'The Lord of the Rings')

3. (He / not / meet / my mother)

4. (They / not / visit / St. Paul's)

5. (I / not / know / him for three months)

6. (You / not / study / French for ten years)

7. (They / not / be / in London for six months)

8. (He / not / hurt / his leg)

9. (She / not / leave / her phone in a taxi)

10. (We / not / lose / our tickets)

(She / not / make / dinner)

11. (They / not / arrive / yet)

12. (Lucy / not / do / her homework)

13. (I / not / read / that book)

14. (He / not / live / in Berlin)

15. (John / not / buy / any food)

16. (She / not / clean / the kitchen)

17. (You / not / call / me)

18. (We / not / find / the book yet)

19. (They / not / sleep / well)

Answers

1. We haven't gone / been to Paris.
2. She hasn't seen 'The Lord of the Rings'.
3. He hasn't met my mother.
4. They haven't visited St. Paul's.
5. I haven't known him for three months.
6. You haven't studied French for ten years.
7. They haven't been in London for six months.
8. He hasn't hurt his leg.
9. She hasn't left her phone in a taxi.
10. We haven't lost our tickets.
11. She hasn't made dinner.
12. They haven't arrived yet.
13. Lucy hasn't done her homework.
14. I haven't read that book.
15. He hasn't lived in Berlin.
16. John hasn't bought any food.
17. She hasn't cleaned the kitchen.
18. You haven't called me.
19. We haven't found the book yet.
20. They haven't slept well.

Present Perfect Simple Questions

Make 'yes / no' present perfect questions.

1. (They / go / to the USA?)

2. (You / read / War and Peace?)

3. (She / be / late for a meeting?)

4. (He / meet / your family yet?)

5. (They / live / here as long as we have?)

6. (You / go / to Australia?)

7. (She / miss / the bus?)

8. (I / meet / you before?)

9. (They / take / the exam?)

10. (She / work / in this company for fifteen years?)

Make 'wh-' present perfect questions.

11. (How long / she / live in London?)

12. (Where / you / be?)

13. (How much coffee / you / drink today?)

14. (What / you / do today?)

15. (How long / he / work here?)

16. (Why / you / bring that?)

17. (How many times / you / visit Scotland?)

18. (How many books / you / read this week?)

19. (How long / you study English?)

20. (How much food / you / buy?)

Answers

1. Have they gone / been* to the USA?
2. Have you read War and Peace?
3. Has she been late for a meeting?
4. Has he met your family yet?
5. Have they lived here as long as we have?
6. Have you gone / been* to Australia?
7. Has she missed the bus?
8. Have I met you before?
9. Have they taken the exam?
10. Has she worked in this company for fifteen years?
11. How long has she lived in London?
12. Where have you been?
13. How much coffee have you drunk today?
14. What have you done today?
15. How long has he worked here?
16. Why have you brought that?
17. How many times have you visited Scotland?
18. How many books have you read this week?
19. How long have you studied English?
20. How much food have you bought?

* see the been / gone explanation on www.perfect-english-grammar.com

Present Perfect Mixed Exercise 1

Make the present perfect: positive, negative or question.

1. (you / keep a pet for three years)

2. (you / come here before?)

3. (it / rain all day?)

4. (who / we / forget to invite?)

5. (we / not / hear that song already)

6. (he / not / forget his books)

7. (she / steal all the chocolate!)

8. (I / explain it well?)

9. (who / he / meet recently?)

10. (how / we / finish already?)

11. (he / study Latin)

12. (I / know him for three months)

13. (where / you / study Arabic?)

14. (what countries / they / visit in Europe?)

15. (he / hurt his leg)

16. (she / leave her phone in a taxi)

17. (we / not / lose our tickets)

18. (she / call her mother?)

19. (he / take a taxi?)

20. (she / go / to the library)

Answers

1. You have kept a pet for three years.
2. Have you come here before?
3. Has it rained all day?
4. Who have we forgotten to invite?
5. We haven't heard that song already.
6. He hasn't forgotten his books
7. She has stolen all the chocolate!
8. Have I explained it well?
9. Who has he met recently?
10. How have we finished already?
11. He has studied Latin.
12. I have known him for three months.
13. Where have you studied Arabic?
14. What countries have they visited in Europe?
15. He has hurt his leg.
16. She has left her phone in a taxi.
17. We haven't lost our tickets.
18. Has she called her mother?
19. Has he taken a taxi?
20. She has gone to the library.

Present Perfect Mixed Exercise 2

Make the present perfect simple: positive, negative or question.

1. (she / pass the exam?)

2. (you / eat lunch yet?)

3. (he / read the newspaper today?)

4. (you / not / study French for ten years)

5. (they / be in London for six months)

6. (where / you / be?)

7. (we / not / go to Paris)

8. (she / not / see The Lord of the Rings)

9. (he / not / meet my mother)

10. (they / not / visit St. Paul's Cathedral yet)

11. (what / she / eat today?)

12. (why / you / do your homework already?)

13. (how / she / make this fantastic cake?)

14. (why / I / miss the plane?)

15. (they / not / go to bed)

16. (it / rain a lot this week)

17. (they / use a credit card before?)

18. (we / have enough to eat?)

19. (she / not / play basketball before)

20. (I / wear a kimono)

Answers

1. Has she passed the exam?
2. Have you eaten lunch yet?
3. Has he read the newspaper today?
4. You haven't studied French for ten years.
5. They have been in London for six months.
6. Where have you been?
7. We haven't gone / been to Paris.
8. She hasn't seen The Lord of the Rings.
9. He hasn't met my mother.
10. They haven't visited St. Paul's Cathedral yet.
11. What has she eaten today?
12. Why have you done your homework already?
13. How has she made this fantastic cake?
14. Why have I missed the plane?
15. They haven't gone to bed.
16. It has rained a lot this week.
17. Have they used a credit card before?
18. Have we had enough to eat?
19. She hasn't played basketball before.
20. I have worn a kimono.

Thirteenth lesson 13: Giving suggestions

MAKING SUGGESTIONS

1. **How about + Ving + O**
What about + Ving + O

B₁: How about playing tennis?
B₂: What about playing tennis?

2. **Why don't you + V + O?**
B₁: Why don't you play tennis?

3. **Shall we + V + O?**
B₁: Shall we play tennis?

4. **S + should + V + O**
B₁: You should play tennis.

5. **Let's + V + O**
B₁: Let's play tennis.

1. I suggest you buy new phone

Accepting:

Yes i will it is good idea

Refusing:

I can't because i must to pay credits

2. I suggest to open project sooner

Accepting:

Yes i will start to study my project

Refusing:

No it is not good time i should get diplomat of management

3. I suggest on houssam teaches us E Commerce from first

Accepting:

Yes it is good idea he will want help us to open our activities

Refusing:

I don't think so because houssam is busy about his teaching us English language

4. Let's go to visit New York

Accepting:

Yes i get visa last month and i love new York

Refusing:

No i can't because i should care my parent

5. What about if you get diplomat license in law private

Accepting:

Yes it is good idea i want to become judgeman

Refusing:

No i can't because i chose law general because i want to become governor on any city

6. Why don't choose hotel near from beach

Accepting:

Yes i love beach let's go there

Refusing:

No there are very expensive i think rent any apartment here and we go to beach by car

7. What do you see to work on project's selling car

Accepting:

Yes why not it has great income tomorrow come to me about studying this project

Refusing:

I have project better than yours about open project's selling aircrafts

Some expressions

Let's revise our lessons.

What about going to the cinema tonight

How about playing cards

Why don't we do our homework

Couldn't we invite your grandmother to our party

Shall we have a walk along the river

What would you say to a cup of coffee

Don't you think it is a good idea to watch TV

Does it matter if we use your car

Accepting a suggestion

Ok. Yes, let's.

Yes, I'd like to

Yes, I'd love to.

What a good idea

Why not

Yes, with pleasure

Yes, I feel like taking a walk.

Disagreeing with a suggestion

No, let's not.

No, I'd rather not

I don't feel like it.

I dislike doing homework.

What an awful idea

Examples

Let's go to the zoo
No, I don't like animals,

How about going to the park
Yes that's a good idea. Let's go

I think you should buy the blue one,
That's a good idea.

I don't think you should sell your car.
Thanks for the advice, but I really need the money.

Let's go bowling tonight.
Sorry,
I can't. I'm meeting a friend for dinner.

Why don't we go skiing on Saturday
Sounds like a good idea. Where do you want to go

Why don't you come with me to Fez
Thanks, but I've already been there.

*Let's practice giving suggestions and responding to them.
Here are some exercises: *

Exercises in Giving Suggestions

Exercise 1: Give suggestions for the following situations:

1. Your friend is struggling with their studies.
2. Your colleague wants to improve their public speaking skills.
3. Your family member is looking for a new job.

Exercise 2: Responding to Suggestions

Respond to the following suggestions:

1. "I suggest you take a break and relax."
- Accepting: _____
- Refusing: _____
2. "Why don't we start a new project together?"
- Accepting: _____
- Refusing: _____
3. "I think you should learn a new language."
- Accepting: _____
- Refusing: _____

Exercise 3: Role-Play

Role-play the following scenarios:

1. Suggesting a new restaurant to try
2. Suggesting a weekend getaway
3. Suggesting a new hobby to take up

Answers

Solving Exercise 1:

1. "I suggest you try a new study technique, like the Pomodoro Technique."
2. "I think you should join a public speaking group to improve your skills."
3. "Maybe you should consider updating your resume and LinkedIn profile."

Solving Exercise 2:

1. Accepting: "That's a great idea, I could use a break."
Refusing: "I don't think that's a good idea, I have too much work to do."
2. Accepting: "That sounds like a great idea, I'd love to collaborate with you."
Refusing: "I'm not sure, I'm pretty busy with my own projects right now."
3. Accepting: "That's a great idea, I've always wanted to learn a new language."
Refusing: "I'm not sure, I don't think I'll have time for it."

1. WRITE SUGGESTIONS BY USING THE PHRASE IN BRACKET.



A. I am very thirsty (drink some water)

B1: How about ?

B2: What about ?

B3: Why don't you ?

B4: Let's ?

B5: Shall we ?

B6: You should



A. It is very cold outside. (put on your coat)

B1: How about ?

B2: What about ?

B3: Why don't you ?

B4: Let's ?

B5: Shall we ?

B6: You should



A. I really missed my mum. (visit her this weekend)

B1: How about ?

B2: What about ?

B3: Why don't you ?

B4: Let's ?

B5: Shall we ?

B6: You should

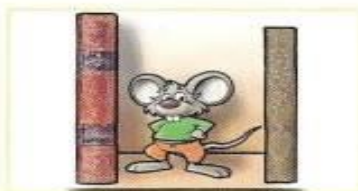
Fourteenth lesson 14: Prepositions

Ah, prepositions! Those little words that can sometimes feel like a big puzzle. Let's explore them. Prepositions are words that show the relationship between a noun or pronoun and other words in a sentence. They often indicate location, direction, time, or manner.

At



Between



In



Behind



Under



On



Near



In front of



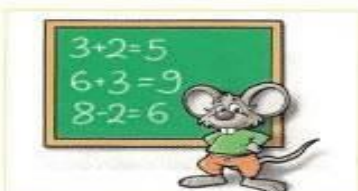
Next to



At home



At school



At work



At the theatre



At the cinema



At the zoo



Here are some common categories of prepositions with examples:

1. Prepositions of Place (Location): These tell us where something is.

- * on: The book is on the table.
- * in: The cat is in the box.
- * at: She is waiting at the bus stop.
- * under: The ball is under the chair.
- * over: The plane flew over the city.
- * above: The picture is above the sofa.
- * below: The fish swam below the surface.
- * beside: He sat beside her.
- * near: The park is near my house.
- * behind: The car is parked behind the building.
- * in front of: The students stood in front of the teacher.
- * between: The house is between two trees.
- * among: She felt comfortable among her friends.

2. Prepositions of Direction (Movement): These show where something is going.

- * to: We are going to the market.
- * from: He came from Spain.
- * into: She walked into the room.
- * out of: The bird flew out of the cage.
- * through: They drove through the tunnel.
- * across: He swam across the river.
- * along: We walked along the beach.
- * up: The cat climbed up the tree.
- * down: The ball rolled down the hill.
- * around: The children ran around the playground.
- * towards: She walked towards the light.
- * away from: He ran away from the dog.

3. Prepositions of Time: These tell us when something happens.

- * at: The meeting is at 3 PM.
- * on: The concert is on Friday.
- * in: She was born in 1990.
- * before: Please arrive before dinner.
- * after: We will eat after the movie.
- * during: It rained during the night.
- * until: I will wait until six o'clock.
- * since: He has lived here since 2010.
- * for: They have been married for five years.
- * by: The report is due by Monday.

4. Prepositions of Manner: These describe how something is done.

- * by: The letter was sent by mail.
- * with: She cut the paper with scissors.
- * without: He left without saying goodbye.
- * like: He sings like an angel.

Compound Prepositions: These are made up of more than one word.

- * according to: According to the news, it will rain.
- * because of: The game was canceled because of the rain.
- * in front of: The car is parked in front of the house.
- * in spite of: In spite of the cold, they went swimming.
- * instead of: I'll have tea instead of coffee.
- * next to: The bank is next to the post office.
- * out of: He ran out of breath.

5. Prepositional Phrases: A prepositional phrase includes the preposition and its object (the noun or pronoun that follows the preposition) and any modifiers.

- * on the big table
- * in the blue box
- * at the busy bus stop
- * under the old wooden chair

DIALOGUE

Ahmed : Where's my notebook

Jamal : It's **on** your bed.

Ahmed : No, it isn't.

Jamal : Well, is it **under** your bed

Ahmed : No.

Jamal : Maybe it's **in** the closet.

Ahmed : No, it isn't in the closet.

Jamal : Is it **between** the table and the bed

Ahmed : Well, I don't know. Maybe it's **next to** your stereo.

Jamal : Oh, that's right

EXERCISE for prepositions

Great! Let's put your knowledge of prepositions to the test. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the most appropriate preposition.

- * The cat jumped _____ the table.
- * I will meet you _____ the cafe _____ 3 PM.
- * The book is _____ the shelf _____ the other books.
- * She walked _____ the park _____ her dog.
- * The airplane flew _____ the clouds.
- * They live _____ a small village _____ the mountains.
- * He arrived _____ London _____ Monday morning.
- * The children were playing _____ the garden.
- * The key is _____ my pocket.
- * The meeting will be held _____ the conference room.

Take your time and think about the relationship each preposition shows in the sentence. Let me know your answers when you're ready!

Solving EXERCISE for prepositions

Okay, let's solve this exercise together! Here are the answers with the prepositions filled in:

- * The cat jumped onto the table.
- * I will meet you at the cafe at 3 PM.
- * The book is on the shelf among the other books.
- * She walked through the park with her dog.
- * The airplane flew above the clouds.
- * They live in a small village in the mountains.
- * He arrived in London on Monday morning.
- * The children were playing in the garden.
- * The key is in my pocket.
- * The meeting will be held in the conference room.

How did you do? Would you like another set of exercises, or would you like to discuss any of these answers in more detail?

1. Complete the sentences with:

in on under behind

The ball is the desk.

The clock is the desk.

The umbrella is the box.

The schoolbag is the radio.



The watch is the chair.

The box is the chair.

2. Complete the sentences with : in on under behind

- Where is Grandma? 

- She's sleeping. She's her bedroom.

- Where are the children?   

- They are playing the living room. Bella is the table.

Charlie is the sofa. Don is a box.

- Where are their mum and dad?

- Their mum is cooking. She's the kitchen.

Their dad is cleaning the bathroom.



Directions: Write the correct preposition used to complete the given sentences.

in	on	under
behind	in front of	next to

1. The sunglasses are _____ the table.



2. The earrings are _____ the jewelry box.



3. The bracelet is _____ the bed.



4. The watch is _____ jewelry box.



5. The eyeglasses are _____ the wardrobe.



6. The ring is _____ the chair.



LOOK AT THE IMAGE AND COMPLETE WITH A SUITABLE PREPOSITION



1. The rug is _____ the floor.
2. The lamp is _____ the telephone.
3. The coffee table is _____ the sofa.
4. The books are _____ the side table.
5. The ball is _____ the coffee table.
6. The butterfly is _____ the lamp.
7. The cat is _____ the sofa.
8. The ship is _____ the clouds.
9. The picture is _____ the sofa.



Prepositions of Place



Complete the sentences with the prepositions in the box.

behind	next to	in front of	over
in	on	between	under

1- There is some pizza

the box.

2- There is a guitar

the lamp and the plant.

3- There are two dogs

the table.

4- There is a window

the sofa.

6- There is a racket

the bag.

7- There is some cheese

the plate.

5- There is a rug

the sofa.

8- There is a lamp

the shelf.

9- There is a trophy

the books.

10- There is a picture

the wall.

11- There is a bird flying

the trees.

12- There are two fish

the bowl.

Where's
the cat ?

Where's
the dog ?

In on between under in front of
Behind on the right of on the left of



A



B



C



D



E



F



G



H



J



K



L

- A – The dog is the chair.
 B – The cat is the table.
 C – The cat is the computer.
 D – The dog is the wardrobe.
 The cat is the wardrobe.
 E – The dog is the bed.
 The cat is the bed.
 F – The dog is the picture.
 G – The cat is the cupboard.
 H – The cat is the TV.
 The dog is the TV.
 The TV is the cat and the dog.
 J – The dog is the chest of drawers.
 The cat is the chest of drawers.

- K – There is a cat the bookcase
 and another cat the bookcase.
 The bookcase is the two cats.
 L – The dog is the CD system.



Fifteenth lesson 15: Adverbs of frequency

Adverbs of frequency tell us how often something happens. They usually come before the main verb, but after the verb "to be."
Here are the most common adverbs of frequency, from most frequent to least frequent:

- * **Always** (100% of the time)
 - * Example: I always drink coffee in the morning.
- * **Usually** (around 90% of the time)
 - * Example: She usually goes for a walk after dinner.
- * **Often** (around 70% of the time)
 - * Example: We often watch movies on weekends.
- * **Sometimes** (around 50% of the time)
 - * Example: They sometimes eat out.
- * **Rarely** (around 10% of the time)
 - * Example: He rarely gets angry.
- * **Never** (0% of the time)
 - * Example: I never skip breakfast.

Placement of Adverbs of Frequency:

The placement of these adverbs is very important:

* Before the main verb:

* **Incorrect:** I drink always coffee.

* **Correct:** I always drink coffee.

* Example: She usually wakes up early.

* Example: They never arrive late.

* After the verb "to be" (am, is, are, was, were):

* **Incorrect:** He never is happy.

* **Correct:** He is never happy.

* Example: I am often tired.

* Example: We are sometimes busy on Fridays.

* Between the auxiliary verb and the main verb (in sentences with auxiliary verbs like "do," "have," "will," "can," etc.):

* Example: You don't usually see him here.

* Example: I have always wanted to visit Japan.

* Example: They will never understand.

Other Ways to Express Frequency:

We can also use phrases to express frequency. These usually go at the beginning or end of a sentence.

* **Every day/week/month/year:**

* Example: I go to the gym every day.

* **Once a day/week/month:**

* Example: She calls her parents once a week.

* **Twice a day/week/month:**

* Example: He checks his email twice a day.

* **Three times a day/week/month:**

* Example: We meet three times a month.

* **From time to time:**

* Example: They visit their grandparents from time to time.

Practice Exercise:

Place the adverb of frequency in the correct position in the following sentences:

- * I (always) drink water.
- * She (never) is late for work.
- * We (often) go to the beach in summer.
- * He (sometimes) plays video games.
- * They (usually) eat dinner at 7 PM.

Let's practice Adverbs of Frequency!

Exercise 1: Fill in the blanks

Complete the sentences with the correct adverb of frequency:

1. I _____ (always/usually) wake up at 7:00 AM on weekdays.
2. She _____ (rarely/sometimes) goes to the gym on Sundays.
3. We _____ (often/never) eat dinner at a restaurant on Fridays.
4. He _____ (always/seldom) checks his phone for notifications.
5. They _____ (usually/rarely) travel abroad during summer.

Exercise 2: Sentence creation

Create sentences using the following adverbs of frequency:

1. Always
2. Often
3. Sometimes
4. Rarely
5. Never

Exercise 3: Conversation

Practice using adverbs of frequency in a conversation:

Person A: "How often do you exercise?"

Person B: "I usually go to the gym three times a week."

Person A: "Do you always eat breakfast?"

Person B: "Yes, I always eat breakfast to start my day."

Adverbs of Frequency:

1. Always (100%)
2. Usually (80-90%)
3. Often (50-80%)
4. Sometimes (20-50%)
5. Rarely (5-20%)
6. Never (0%)

Examples

- I **always** go to school by bus
- He **often** drinks some milk in the morning.
- She **seldom** drive to work
- They **sometimes** watch TV in the morning.
- He is **always** on time
- It is **sometimes** cold in the south
- You are **never** satisfied

Tips

- Use adverbs of frequency to describe habits and routines.
- Practice using different adverbs to express varying frequencies.

Let's Practice!

ANSWERS

Feel free to ask me to create more exercises or provide answers to the ones above!

Let's solve the exercises!

Exercise 1: Fill in the blanks

1. I **usually** wake up at 7:00 AM on weekdays.
2. She **sometimes** goes to the gym on Sundays.
3. We **often** eat dinner at a restaurant on Fridays.
4. He **always** checks his phone for notifications.
5. They **usually** travel abroad during summer.

Exercise 2: Sentence creation

1. I **always** drink water before bedtime.
2. She **often** attends concerts on weekends.
3. We **sometimes** have pizza nights on Fridays.
4. He **rarely** eats spicy food.
5. I **never** skip breakfast.

Exercise 3: Conversation

Person A: "How often do you read books?"

Person B: "I **often** read books before bed."

Person A: "Do you **always** watch TV on Sundays?"

Person B: "No, I **sometimes** watch TV on Sundays."

Additional Exercises

1. Create sentences using adverbs of frequency to describe your daily routine.
2. Ask a friend about their habits using adverbs of frequency.

Adverbs of Frequency

Put the adverb in the right place in the sentence:

1. She goes to bed early (always)

2. We watch TV (never)

3. Julie and Tom go to the cinema (often)

4. Alex meets John (once a week)

5. I eat fast food (sometimes)

6. They cook at home (hardly ever)

7. He studies English (every night)

8. You drink coffee (normally)

9. I go to the park (rarely)

10. They go to a restaurant (from time to time)

11. You visit your parents (several times a year)

12. She goes to museums (seldom)



ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

Put the frequency adverbs and expressions in the right place.

1. Susan is late for school. (never)

2. My brother doesn't write letters to his friends. (usually)

3. We go on holidays. (twice a year)

4. Peter wears a tie. (sometimes)

5. I eat fish. (once a week)

6. Do the children watch TV? (often)

7. My father is very busy. (always)

8. Peter tidies his room. (never)

9. My brother and I go fishing. (every week)

10. My mother goes shopping on Saturdays. (always)

11. Do you get up late at the weekend? (usually)

12. I drink tea. (every morning)

13. Mary rides her motorbike to work. (sometimes)

14. I exercise in the afternoons. (often)

15. Does Jane have lunch at home? (usually)

9-Writing: describe the weather

Types of Weather:

1. ***Sunny***: Clear skies, warm temperatures, perfect for outdoor activities.
2. ***Cloudy***: Overcast skies, sometimes with rain or thunderstorms, ideal for indoor activities.
3. ***Rainy***: Precipitation in the form of rain, can be calming or disruptive.
4. ***Snowy***: Precipitation in the form of snow, great for winter sports.
5. ***Windy***: Strong winds, sometimes with gusts, can be challenging for outdoor activities.
6. ***Foggy***: Low visibility due to fog or mist, requires extra caution.

Weather Forecasting:

1. ***Temperature***: Measured in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, affects daily activities.
2. ***Humidity***: Amount of moisture in the air, impacts comfort levels.
3. ***Wind Speed***: Measured in km/h or mph, influences outdoor plans.
4. ***Precipitation***: Rain, snow, sleet, or hail, crucial for planning.

Weather-Related Vocabulary:

1. ***Forecast***: Prediction of future weather conditions, helps with planning.
2. ***Storm***: Severe weather with strong winds, heavy rain, or thunder, requires caution.
3. ***Drought***: Prolonged period of abnormally low rainfall, impacts agriculture.
4. ***Heatwave***: Prolonged period of abnormally hot weather, demands precautions.

Conversation Starters:

1. "What's the weather like in your city today?"
2. "How does the weather affect your daily routine?"
3. "What's your favorite weather-related activity?"

The weather: Listen and fill the gaps. Use the words in the box.

snowy - now - windy - snowboarding - cold - sunny - cool -
sitting - weather - doing - rainy - stormy - doing - chatting
- hot - planning - home

MAYA: Hi, everyone. Thanks for coming online. Ming! What are you _____? What's the _____ like in Shanghai today?

MING: Hey! Well, I'm _____ at home because it's _____ and _____. But I'll go out when the rain stops. It's nice and warm outside.

MAYA: Are you at home too, Nadine? What's the weather like in Cape Town today?

NADINE: No, I'm _____ on the phone. I'm out shopping! In Cape Town, it's _____ and _____. It's not windy.

STIG: Hey Maya. What about you? How's the weather in Rio de Janeiro?

MAYA: Well, I'm stuck at home. It's kind of _____ but it's _____. It's very _____. I don't think I can go out today.

MING: Stig, what's the weather like in Stockholm today?

STIG: In Stockholm, it's _____ and _____ today. I'm at home right now but I'm _____ to meet my friends for lunch later.

NADINE: Hey, Stig. What's the weather like in Sweden today?

STIG: It's _____. It's always snowy in winter here.

NADINE: Oh! So, what are you doing _____?

STIG: I'm doing something fun.

NADINE: Cool! Are you at _____?

STIG: No, I'm not.

NADINE: Come on, Stig! Tell me what you're doing?

STIG: I'm _____!

SAMPLE DIALOGUES

1. What's the weather like in Roma it's sunny?
2. And what's the temperature
3. It's very hot. It's 39 degrees *Celsius*

1. What's the weather like in Alaska it's snowy
2. And what's the temperature there it's very cold.
3. It's -20 ° Celsius (less twenty = -20)

Exercises:

1. Describe a memorable weather event.
2. Discuss how weather affects your mood.

Let's solve the exercises!

1. Describe a memorable weather event.

One memorable weather event that comes to mind is a severe thunderstorm I experienced during a summer vacation. The storm rolled in suddenly, bringing heavy rain and strong winds. The thunder was loud, and the lightning illuminated the dark sky. Although it was intense, the storm passed quickly, leaving behind a refreshing cool breeze.

2. Discuss how weather affects your mood.

Weather significantly impacts my mood. Sunny days always boost my energy and put me in a good mood. I feel more motivated to go outside, exercise, or engage in outdoor activities. On the other hand, gloomy or rainy days can make me feel lethargic and introspective. However, some people find rainy days perfect for relaxation and reading, so it really depends on personal preferences.

1-Small Story: read, understand, and answer:

New good friend

Mia was new to the neighborhood. She stood alone by the big oak tree at the edge of the park, watching the other children play a game of tag. They were laughing and running, and she felt a small, lonely ache in her stomach. She hugged her knees, wishing she was brave enough to join them. Suddenly, a red ball bounced right in front of her. A little girl with bright red shoes and two ponytails came running over. "Sorry!" the girl said, picking up the ball. "It got away from me." Mia just shrugged. She didn't know what to say. The girl smiled. "I'm Lily. You're new, right?" Mia nodded, her voice barely a whisper. "I'm Mia."

"Do you want to play?" Lily asked, holding the ball. "We need one more person for a new game."

It's called 'Cloud Jump.'"

Mia's eyes widened. "What's that?"

"You'll see!" Lily laughed. She didn't wait for an answer. She just took Mia's hand and pulled her toward the group.

The other children looked at Mia for a second, but Lily just said, "This is my new friend, Mia! She's on my team."

The game was simple and fun. They had to jump and pretend to touch the clouds in the sky. Mia was shy at first, but soon she was jumping and laughing with the rest of them. She didn't feel lonely anymore. She felt like she belonged.

Later, when the sun was starting to set, Mia and Lily sat under the big oak tree, tired but happy.

"I'm glad you're my friend," Lily said, looking at the sky.

Mia smiled, a real, wide smile that reached her eyes. "Me too," she said. It was the best feeling in the world.

Story's Comprehension Questions

Here are some questions about the story to check understanding and encourage deeper thinking.

Basic Understanding

- * Where is Mia at the beginning of the story?
- * Why is Mia feeling lonely?
- * What does Lily do that helps Mia feel better?

Character and Feelings

- * How does Mia's mood change from the beginning of the story to the end?
- * What does the detail about the "red ball" tell us about how Lily acts?
- * How would you describe Lily's personality?

Deeper Thinking

- * What is the main lesson or message of this story?
- * Have you ever been in a new place and felt like Mia? What did you do?
- * What are some qualities that make a good friend, based on how Lily acted?

10.writing about good friend

A GOOD FRIEND

- A good friend always supports you and helps you when you are troubled.
- A good friend is always there to lend their shoulder when you need to cry.
- A true friend always supports and loves you.
- A good friendship is borne out of brotherhood and fellow-feeling.
- Friendship does not know any particular age boundary.
- We can build a great friendship with almost anyone, whether they be younger or older.
- Friendship requires dedication and devotion.
- A true friend never lets you feel hesitant or sad or inferior about something.
- The mark of true friendship is respect.

Sixteenth lesson 16: Verb to be in past: Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1-*Positive*

Pronoun + verb to be + noun

I.....was.....doctor

You.....were.....doctor

He.....was.....doctor

She.....was.....doctor

It.....was.....doctor

We.....were.....doctors

You.....were.....doctors

They.....were.....doctors

2-*Negative*

Pronoun + verb to be+negative "not" + noun

I.....was.....not.....doctor

You.....were.....not.....doctor

He.....was.....not.....doctor

She.....was.....not.....doctor

It.....was.....not.....doctor

We.....were.....not....doctors

You.....were.....not.....doctors

They.....were....not.....doctor

3-*Interrogation*

verb to be+ pronoun + noun ?

Was i doctor?

Yes you were

/no you were not

Were you doctor?

Yes i was

/ no i was not

Was he doctor?

Yes he was

/no he was not

Was she doctor?

Yes she was

/no she was not

Was it doctor?

Yes it was

/no it was not

Were we doctors?

Yes you were

/no you were not

Were you doctors?

Yes we were

/no we were not

Were they doctors?

Yes they were

/no they were not

Past Simple with 'Be' - Positive and Negative Form

Make the past simple positive or negative.

1. It _____ (be) cold yesterday.
2. She _____ (be) hungry.
3. We _____ (be) late for the meeting.
4. I _____ (be) tired last night.
5. The exam _____ (be) difficult.
6. They _____ (be) in Berlin.
7. You _____ (be) in the library when I called you.
8. The holiday _____ (be) fun.
9. He _____ (be) early for the interview.
10. The people we met last night _____ (be) French.
11. That woman _____ (not / be) Spanish.
12. Julie _____ (not / be) late for the class.
13. The food _____ (not / be) very good.
14. They _____ (not / be) my uncle and aunt.
15. I _____ (not / be) rude to the waitress.
16. The test _____ (not / be) easy.
17. We _____ (not / be) tired when we arrived.
18. They _____ (not / be) on the bus when I called.
19. You _____ (not / be) here when she came.
20. He _____ (not / be) my boyfriend.

Answers

1. It was cold yesterday.
2. She was hungry.
3. We were late for the meeting.
4. I was tired last night.
5. The exam was difficult.
6. They were in Berlin.
7. You were in the library when I called you.
8. The holiday was fun.
9. He was early for the interview.
10. The people we met last night were French.
11. That woman wasn't Spanish.
12. Julie wasn't late for the class.
13. The food wasn't very good.
14. They weren't my uncle and aunt.
15. I wasn't rude to the waitress.
16. The test wasn't easy.
17. We weren't tired when we arrived.
18. They weren't on the bus when I called.
19. You weren't here when she came.
20. He wasn't my boyfriend.

Past Simple with 'Be' Question Forms

Make past simple 'yes / no' or 'wh-' questions.

1. (John / be / at the party?)

2. (you / be / tired yesterday?)

3. (the weather / be / good?)

4. (we / be / too noisy?)

5. (he / be / a doctor when he was young?)

6. (they / be / in the class last week?)

7. (she / be / a good student?)

8. (I / be / on time?)

9. (Julie and Lucy / be / at the meeting?)

10. (we / be / in Paris?)

11. (where / you / be?)

12. (what / that noise / be?)

13. (who / that man / be?)

14. (how / the weekend / be?)

15. (where / the money / be?)

16. (why / the door open / be?)

17. (who / the teacher / be?)

18. (how / your holiday / be?)

19. (what / the weather like / be?)

20. (why / the children awake / be?)

Answers

1. Was John at the party?
2. Were you tired yesterday?
3. Was the weather good?
4. Were we too noisy?
5. Was he a doctor when he was young?
6. Were they in the class last week?
7. Was she a good student?
8. Was I on time?
9. Were Julie and Lucy at the meeting?
10. Were we in Paris?
11. Where were you?
12. What was that noise?
13. Who was that man?
14. How was the weekend?
15. Where was the money?
16. Why was the door open?
17. Who was the teacher?
18. How was your holiday?
19. What was the weather like?
20. Why were the children awake?

Past Simple with 'Be'

Make the past simple.

1. (I / be / at the cinema last night.)

2. (the children / be / naughty?)

3. (we / be / in a cafe when you called.)

4. (I / be / late?)

5. (she / be / a teacher when she was young.)

6. (where / we / be?)

7. (you / be / okay?)

8. (we / be / too tired?)

9. (how / the party / be?)

10. (they / be / late for the interview.)

11. (you / be / in the garden.)

12. (what / his name / be?)

13. (it / not / be / cold.)

14. (she / be / beautiful?)

15. (she / not / be my wife at the time.)

16. (he / be / hungry.)

17. (why / you / be / late?)

18. (you / not / be / early.)

19. (they not / be / in love.)

(we / not / be / in China.)

Answers

1. I was at the cinema last night.
2. Were the children naughty?
3. We were in a cafe when you called.
4. Was I late?
5. She was a teacher when she was young.
6. Where were we?
7. Were you okay?
8. Were we too tired?
9. How was the party?
10. They were late for the interview.
11. You were in the garden.
12. What was his name?
13. It wasn't cold.
14. Was she beautiful?
15. She wasn't my wife at the time.
16. He was hungry.
17. Why were you late?
18. You weren't early.
19. They weren't in love.
20. We weren't in China.

Seventeenth lesson 17: Verb to do in past

Positive / Negative /Interrogation

1*Positive*

1. Verbs in regular:

work

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....worked.....to company

You.....worked.....to company

He.....worked.....to company

She.....worked.....to company

It.....worked.....to company

We.....worked.....to company

You.....worked.....to company

They.....worked.....to company

Here are even more examples of regular verbs in their base form, past simple, and past participle:

1. We can add ed in verb regular like :

Work -> worked

2. we add ied if it was verb end by letters consonant + y like :

Study -> studied

|Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |

| agree | agreed | agreed |

| answer | answered | answered |

| arrive | arrived | arrived |

| ask | asked | asked |

| bake | baked | baked |

| call | called | called |

| carry | carried | carried |

| change | changed | changed |

| dance | danced | danced |

| decide | decided | decided |

| develop | developed | developed |

| discover | discovered | discovered |

| enjoy | enjoyed | enjoyed |

| exercise | exercised | exercised |

| expect | expected | expected |

| explain | explained | explained |

| fear | feared | feared |

follow	followed	followed
greet	greeted	greeted
happen	happened	happened
hope	hoped	hoped
hurry	hurried	hurried
imagine	imagined	imagined
jog	jogged	jogged
jump	jumped	jumped
kick	kicked	kicked
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
look	looked	looked
love	loved	loved
manage	managed	managed
march	marched	marched
melt	melted	melted
move	moved	moved
need	needed	needed
notice	noticed	noticed
obey	obeyed	obeyed
order	ordered	ordered
pack	packed	packed
park	parked	parked
pass	passed	passed
perform	performed	performed
plan	planned	planned
practice	practiced	practiced
prefer	preferred	preferred
prepare	prepared	prepared
print	printed	printed
promise	promised	promised
protect	protected	protected
provide	provided	provided
reach	reached	reached
realize	realized	realized
receive	received	received
record	recorded	recorded
refuse	refused	refused
remember	remembered	
 remembered |

remind	reminded	reminded
repair	repaired	repaired
repeat	repeated	repeated
report	reported	reported
rest	rested	rested
return	returned	returned
save	saved	saved
search	searched	searched
seem	seemed	seemed
serve	served	served
share	shared	shared
shop	shopped	shopped
shout	shouted	shouted
show	showed	showed
slip	slipped	slipped
solve	solved	solved
start	started	started
stay	stayed	stayed
stop	stopped	stopped
study	studied	studied
succeed	succeeded	succeeded
suffer	suffered	suffered
surprise	surprised	surprised
talk	talked	talked
thank	thanked	thanked
touch	touched	touched
travel	traveled/travelled	
traveled/travelled		
try	tried	tried
turn	turned	turned
use	used	used
wait	waited	waited
want	wanted	wanted
wash	washed	washed
wish	wished	wished
worry	worried	worried
wrap	wrapped	wrapped
yell	yelled	yelled
zip	zipped	zipped

2. Verbs in irregular:

think

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....thought.....in topic

You.....thought.....in topic

He.....thought.....in topic

She.....thought.....in topic

It.....thought.....in topic

We.....thought.....in topic

You.....thought.....in subject

They.....thought.....in subject

You're looking for examples of irregular verbs, which ~don't follow the simple "-ed"~ rule for their past simple and past participle forms. Here are some common ones:

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |

| be | was/were | been |

| become | became | become |

| begin | began | begun |

| break | broke | broken |

| bring | brought | brought |

| build | built | built |

| buy | bought | bought |

| catch | caught | caught |

| choose | chose | chosen |

| come | came | come |

| cost | cost | cost |

| cut | cut | cut |

| do | did | done |

| draw | drew | drawn |

| drink | drank | drunk |

| drive | drove | driven |

| eat | ate | eaten |

| fall | fell | fallen |

| feel | felt | felt |

| find | found | found |

| fly | flew | flown |

| forget | forgot | forgotten/forgot |

| get | got | gotten/got |

| give | gave | given |

| go | went | gone |

| grow | grew | grown |

| have | had | had |

| hear | heard | heard |

| hit | hit | hit |

| hold | held | held |

| hurt | hurt | hurt |

| keep | kept | kept |

| know | knew | known |

| lay | laid | laid |

| lead | led | led |

| leave | left | left |

| lend | lent | lent |

| let | let | let |

lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read (pronounced "red")	
read (pronounced "red")		
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown/showed
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	
 understood |

wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written
beat	beat	beaten
bend	bent	bent
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
cast	cast	cast
cling	clung	clung
creep	crept	crept
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dream	dreamt/dreamed	
dreamt/dreamed		
feed	fed	fed
fight	fought	fought
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
forbid	forbade	forbidden
foresee	foresaw	foreseen
freeze	froze	frozen
grind	ground	ground
hang (object)	hung	hung
hide	hid	hidden
kneel	knelt/kneeled	
knelt/kneeled		
knit	knit/knitted	knit/knitted
know	knew	known
leap	leapt/leaped	leapt/leaped
light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted
mow	mowed	mown/mowed
prove	proved	proven/proved
quit	quit	quit
rid	rid	rid
saw	sawed	sawn/sawed
seek	sought	sought

sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
shed	shed	shed
shoe	shod	shod
shrink	shrank	shrunk
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
smite	smote	smitten
sow	sowed	sown/sowed
spin	spun	spun
spit	spat	spat
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
sting	stung	stung
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck/stricken
swear	swore	sworn

sweep	swept	swept
swing	swung	swung
tear	tore	torn
thrive	throve/thrived	
thriven/thrived		
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden
undergo	underwent	undergone
uphold	upheld	upheld
weave	wove	woven
weep	wept	wept
wet	wet/wetted	wet/wetted
wind	wound	wound
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
withstand	withstood	withstood
wring	wrung	wrung

Irregular Verbs

Base Form	Simple Past Tense	Past Participle
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was, were	been
bear	bore	born
beat	beat	beat
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
beset	beset	beset
bet	bet	bet
bid	bid/bade	bid/bidden
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken

breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dived/dove	dived
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
drive	drove	driven
drink	drank	drunk
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought

find	found	found
fit	fit	fit
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forego (forgo)	forewent	foregone

forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
knit	knit	knit
know	knew	know
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
leap	leaped/leapt	leaped/leapt
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lighted/lit	lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
misspell	misspelled/misspelt	misspelled/misspelt
mistake	mistook	mistaken
mow	mowed	mowed/mown
overcome	overcame	overcome
overdo	overdid	overdone
overtake	overtook	overtaken
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown
pay	paid	paid

plead	pled	pled
prove	proved	proved/proven
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawed/sawn
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewed/sewn
shake	shook	shaken
shave	shaved	shaved/shaven
shear	shore	shorn
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone	shone
shoe	shoed	shoed/shod
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	showed/shown
shrink	shrank	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
slit	slit	slit
smite	smote	smitten
sow	sowed	sowed/sown
speak	spoke	spoken

speed	sped	sped
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt
spin	spun	spun
spit	spit/spat	spit
split	split	split
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang/sprung	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck
string	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swelled/swollen
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
thrive	thrived/throve	thrived
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden
understand	understood	understood
uphold	upheld	upheld
upset	upset	upset
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
weave	weaved/wove	weaved/woven
wed	wed	wed
weep	wept	wept

wind	wound	wound
win	won	won
withhold	withheld	withheld
withstand	withstood	withstood
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

2-***Negative***: did not

to have

Pronoun + negative + verb to do + object

I.....***did not***.....have...responsible house
 You...***did not***.....have..responsible house
 He.....***did not***.....have..responsible house
 She...***did not***.....have...responsible house
 It.....***did not***.....have...responsible house
 We....***did not***.....have...responsible house
 You...***did not***.....have..responsible house
 They..***did not***.....have...responsible house

3-*Interrogation*:

to have

Did + Pronoun + verb to do infinitive + object ?

1- Did I have money ?

Yes you did

No you did not

2- did you have money?

Yes i did

No you did not

3- did he have money ?

Yes he did

No he did not

4- did she have money ?

Yes she did

No she did not

5- did it have money ?

Yes it did

No it did not

6- did we have money ?

Yes you did

No you did not

7- did you have money ?

Yes we did

No we did not

8- did they have money ?

Yes they did

No they did not

Irregular Verbs Past Simple (Part 1)

Make the past simple.

1. She _____ (bring) some chocolates to the party.
2. I _____ (hear) a new song on the radio.
3. I _____ (read) three books last week.
4. They _____ (speak) French to the waitress.
5. He _____ (understand) during the class, but now he doesn't understand.
6. I _____ (forget) to buy some milk.
7. She _____ (have) a baby in June.
8. You _____ (lose) your keys last week.
9. They _____ (swim) 500m.
10. I _____ (give) my mother a CD for Christmas.
11. At the age of 23, she _____ (become) a doctor.
12. I _____ (know) the answer yesterday.
13. He _____ (tell) me that he lived in Toronto.
14. We _____ (lend) John £200.
15. She _____ (drink) too much coffee yesterday.
16. The children _____ (sleep) in the car.
17. He _____ (keep) his promise.
18. I _____ (choose) the steak for dinner.
19. The film _____ (begin) late.
20. We _____ (fly) to Sydney.
21. They _____ (drive) to Beijing.
22. He _____ (teach) English at the University.
23. I _____ (send) you an e-mail earlier.
24. We _____ (leave) the house at 7 am.
25. He _____ (feel) terrible after eating the prawns.

Answers

1. She brought some chocolates to the party.
2. I heard a new song on the radio.
3. I read three books last week.
4. They spoke French to the waitress.
5. He understood during the class, but now he doesn't understand.
6. I forgot to buy some milk.
7. She had a baby in June.
8. You lost your keys last week.
9. They swam 500m.
10. I gave my mother a CD for Christmas.
11. At the age of 23, she became a doctor.
12. I knew the answer yesterday.
13. He told me that he lived in Toronto.
14. We lent John £200.
15. She drank too much coffee yesterday.
16. The children slept in the car.
17. He kept his promise.
18. I chose the steak for dinner.
19. The film began late.
20. We flew to Sydney.
21. They drove to Beijing.
22. He taught English at the University.
23. I sent you an e-mail earlier.
24. We left the house at 7 am.
25. He felt terrible after eating the prawns.

Irregular Verbs Past Simple (Part 2)

1. I _____ (come) to England in 1993.
2. She _____ (stand) under the tree to shelter from the rain.
3. They _____ (do) their homework yesterday.
4. We _____ (sing) too much last night. I have a sore throat!
5. He already _____ (eat) all the cake.
6. The child _____ (fall) off his bicycle.
7. It _____ (take) three hours to drive to Paris.
8. I _____ (find) your keys under the table.
9. She _____ (get) a new bike for her birthday.
10. She _____ (sell) her house last year.
11. We _____ (go) to New York in January.
12. Finally, my mother _____ (let) me go to a party.
13. It _____ (be) cold last night.
14. I _____ (meet) John at the weekend.
15. Lucy _____ (pay) the bill, before leaving the restaurant.
16. We _____ (see) the new film yesterday.
17. She _____ (wear) her new coat to the party.
18. I _____ (think) my football team would win.
19. They _____ (put) their bags in the bedroom.
20. Billy _____ (run) after the bus.
21. She _____ (say) that she would come later.
22. I _____ (buy) some books this morning.
23. We _____ (make) a cake, it was delicious.
24. He _____ (sit) on the old chair, and it broke.
25. They _____ (write) a letter to their parents.

Answers

1. I came to England in 1993.
2. She stood under the tree to shelter from the rain.
3. They did their homework yesterday.
4. We sang too much last night. I have a sore throat!
5. He already ate all the cake.
6. The child fell off his bicycle.
7. It took three hours to drive to Paris.
8. I found your keys under the table.
9. She got a new bike for her birthday.
10. She sold her house last year.
11. We went to New York in January.
12. Finally, my mother let me go to a party.
13. It was cold last night.
14. I met John at the weekend.
15. Lucy paid the bill, before leaving the restaurant.
16. We saw the new film yesterday.
17. She wore her new coat to the party.
18. I thought my football team would win.
19. They put their bags in the bedroom.
20. Billy ran after the bus.
21. She said that she would come later.
22. I bought some books this morning.
23. We made a cake, it was delicious.
24. He sat on the old chair, and it broke.
25. They wrote a letter to their parents.

Past Simple Form Negative (other verbs)

Make the past simple negative.

1. (I / not / go out last night)

2. (you / not / come to the party)

3. (she / not / love chocolate as a child)

4. (he / not / like sport)

5. (we / not / study for the exam)

6. (they / not / cook at the weekend)

7. (Lucy / not / meet her friends last week)

8. (I / not / stay at home)

9. (you / not / do your homework)

10. (John / not / work in the bank at the same time as me)

11. (they / not / play tennis yesterday)

12. (we / not / go on holiday last year)

13. (Julie and Anna / not / clean the house at all)

14. (she / not / cry much as a baby)

15. (he / not / drive to work)

16. (I / not / remember to buy milk)

17. (you / not / wash the dishes)

18. (David and I / not / dance at the party)

19. (they / not / play the piano)

20. (it / not / rain yesterday)

Answers

1. I didn't go out last night.
2. You didn't come to the party.
3. She didn't love chocolate as a child.
4. He didn't like sport.
5. We didn't study for the exam.
6. They didn't cook at the weekend.
7. Lucy didn't meet her friends last week.
8. I didn't stay at home.
9. You didn't do your homework.
10. John didn't work in the bank at the same time as me.
11. They didn't play tennis yesterday.
12. We didn't go on holiday last year.
13. Julie and Anna didn't clean the house at all.
14. She didn't cry much as a baby.
15. He didn't drive to work.
16. I didn't remember to buy milk.
17. You didn't wash the dishes.
18. David and I didn't dance at the party.
19. They didn't play the piano.
20. It didn't rain yesterday.

Past Simple Form 'Yes / No' Questions (other verbs)

Make past simple 'yes / no' questions:

1. (I / see you last week?)

2. (you / meet your father yesterday?)

3. (we / go to Spain in June?)

4. (it / snow last winter?)

5. (they / stay in last night?)

6. (Julie / watch a film on Saturday?)

7. (Lucy / pass the exam?)

8. (you / have fun at the party?)

9. (I / lock the door?)

10. (Sally and Victoria / go to a café at lunchtime?)

11. (we / meet in 1997?)

12. (the film / start on time?)

13. (they / cook dinner?)

14. (it / rain a lot on your holiday?)

15. (you / feel okay on the first day of your new job?)

16. (I / leave my bag in the taxi?)

17. (he / play sport as a child?)

18. (you / buy anything today?)

19. (the meeting / go well?)

20. (you / like the meal?)

Answers

1. Did I see you last week?
2. Did you meet your father yesterday?
3. Did we go to Spain in June?
4. Did it snow last winter?
5. Did they stay in last night?
6. Did Julie watch a film on Saturday?
7. Did Lucy pass the exam?
8. Did you have fun at the party?
9. Did I lock the door?
10. Did Sally and Victoria go to a café at lunchtime?
11. Did we meet in 1997?
12. Did the film start on time?
13. Did they cook dinner?
14. Did it rain a lot on your holiday?
15. Did you feel okay on the first day of your new job?
16. Did I leave my bag in the taxi?
17. Did he play sport as a child?
18. Did you buy anything today?
19. Did the meeting go well?
20. Did you like the meal?

Past Simple Form 'Wh' Questions (other verbs)

Make past simple 'wh' questions:

1. (where / you / go to school?)

2. (when / she / arrive?)

3. (why / he / eat so much?)

4. (what / they / do yesterday?)

5. (who / you / meet at the party?)

6. (how / she / come to work this morning?)

7. (where / I / leave my glasses?)

8. (when / he / get home last night?)

9. (what / you / do at the weekend?)

10. (why / she / get angry?)

11. (who / they / talk to earlier?)

12. (what / we / do last Christmas?)

13. (why / it / rain on my birthday?)

14. (how / she / finish so quickly?)

15. (where / he / go after the class last week?)

16. (what / I / do last Tuesday?)

17. (when / you / start your job?)

18. (how / she / get here?)

19. (why / you / arrive so late?)

20. (what / he / do last summer?)

Answers

1. Where did you go to school?
2. When did she arrive?
3. Why did he eat so much?
4. What did they do yesterday?
5. Who did you meet at the party?
6. How did she come to work this morning?
7. Where did I leave my glasses?
8. When did he get home last night?
9. What did you do at the weekend?
10. Why did she get angry?
11. Who did they talk to earlier?
12. What did we do last Christmas?
13. Why did it rain on my birthday?
14. How did she finish so quickly?
15. Where did he go after the class last week?
16. What did I do last Tuesday?
17. When did you start your job?
18. How did she get here?
19. Why did you arrive so late?
20. What did he do last summer?

Past Simple Form Other Verbs - Mixed Exercise 1

Make the past simple: positive, negative or question.

1. I _____ (work) in a bank for ten years.
2. Where _____ (you / live) when you were young?
3. She _____ (not / study) French at university.
4. He _____ (travel) through the Middle East last year.
5. _____ (they / visit) the Louvre in Paris?
6. She _____ (not / watch) TV yesterday.
7. We _____ (buy) a new car last weekend.
8. Where _____ (you / teach) before you came here?
9. He _____ (not / think) that he was right.
10. I _____ (cook) steak last night.
11. _____ (Lucy / read) War and Peace at school?
12. She _____ (not / write) to her grandmother.
13. We _____ (have) a computer when I was a child.
14. Where _____ (you / go) on holiday?
15. I _____ (love) ice cream when I was a child.
16. They _____ (not / meet) yesterday.
17. _____ (she / swim) in the sea in Greece?
18. We _____ (not / play) tennis yesterday because it was raining.
19. He _____ (try) to lift the box but he couldn't.
20. What _____ (you / eat) for lunch?

Answers

1. I worked in a bank for ten years.
2. Where did you live when you were young?
3. She didn't study French at university.
4. He travelled through the Middle East last year.
5. Did they visit the Louvre in Paris?
6. She didn't watch TV yesterday.
7. We bought a new car last weekend.
8. Where did you teach before you came here?
9. He didn't think that he was right.
10. I cooked steak last night.
11. Did Lucy read War and Peace at school?
12. She didn't write to her grandmother.
13. We had a computer when I was a child.
14. Where did you go on holiday?
15. I loved ice cream when I was a child.
16. They didn't meet yesterday.
17. Did she swim in the sea in Greece?
18. We didn't play tennis yesterday because it was raining.
19. He tried to lift the box but he couldn't.
20. What did you eat for lunch?

Past Simple Form Other Verbs - Mixed Exercise 2

Make the past simple: positive, negative or question.

1. I _____ (not / drink) any beer last night.
2. She _____ (get on) the bus in the centre of the city.
3. What time _____ (he / get up) yesterday?
4. Where _____ (you / get off) the train?
5. I _____ (not / change) trains at Victoria.
6. We _____ (wake up) very late.
7. What _____ (he / give) his mother for Christmas?
8. I _____ (receive) £300 when my uncle _____ (die).
9. We _____ (not / use) the computer last night.
10. _____ (she / make) good coffee?
11. They _____ (live) in Paris.
12. She _____ (read) the newspaper yesterday.
13. I _____ (not / watch) TV.
14. He _____ (not / study) for the exam.
15. _____ (he / call) you?
16. _____ (I / forget) something?
17. What time _____ (the film / start)?
18. He _____ (have) a shower.
19. Why _____ (you / come)?
20. _____ (he / go) to the party?

Answers

1. I didn't drink any beer last night.
2. She got on the bus in the centre of the city.
3. What time did he get up yesterday?
4. Where did you get off the train?
5. I didn't change trains at Victoria.
6. We woke up very late.
7. What did he give his mother for Christmas?
8. I received £300 when my uncle died.
9. We didn't use the computer last night.
10. Did she make good coffee?
11. They lived in Paris.
12. She read the newspaper yesterday.
13. I didn't watch TV.
14. He didn't study for the exam.
15. Did he call you?
16. Did I forget something?
17. What time did the film start?
18. He had a shower.
19. Why did you come?
20. Did he go to the party?

Past Simple Form Other Verbs - Mixed Exercise 3

Make the past simple: positive, negative or question.

1. She _____ (go) home.
2. We _____ (watch) a film.
3. When _____ (he / arrive)?
4. I _____ (buy) a new car.
5. Where _____ (you / live)?
6. I _____ (play) tennis.
7. Where _____ (you / work) before?
8. _____ (they / come) for lunch?
9. _____ (we / study) this last year?
10. They _____ (drink) coffee.
11. _____ (you / see) that film?
12. We _____ (eat) dinner.
13. You _____ (not / go) out last night.
14. He _____ (study).
15. What _____ (you / watch)?
16. We _____ (not / call) you yesterday.
17. They _____ (not / arrive) on time.
18. It _____ (not / rain).
19. We _____ (not / drink) beer.
20. You _____ (clean) the kitchen.

Answers

1. She went home.
2. We watched a film.
3. When did he arrive?
4. I bought a new car.
5. Where did you live?
6. I played tennis.
7. Where did you work before?
8. Did they come for lunch?
9. Did we study this last year?
10. They drank coffee.
11. Did you see that film?
12. We ate dinner.
13. You didn't go out last night.
14. He studied.
15. What did you watch?
16. We didn't call you yesterday.
17. They didn't arrive on time.
18. It didn't rain.
19. We didn't drink beer.
20. You cleaned the kitchen.

Past Simple Form Other Verbs - Mixed Exercise 3

Make the past simple: positive, negative or question.

1. She _____ (go) home.
2. We _____ (watch) a film.
3. When _____ (he / arrive)?
4. I _____ (buy) a new car.
5. Where _____ (you / live)?
6. I _____ (play) tennis.
7. Where _____ (you / work) before?
8. _____ (they / come) for lunch?
9. _____ (we / study) this last year?
10. They _____ (drink) coffee.
11. _____ (you / see) that film?
12. We _____ (eat) dinner.
13. You _____ (not / go) out last night.
14. He _____ (study).
15. What _____ (you / watch)?
16. We _____ (not / call) you yesterday.
17. They _____ (not / arrive) on time.
18. It _____ (not / rain).
19. We _____ (not / drink) beer.
20. You _____ (clean) the kitchen.

Answers

1. She went home.
2. We watched a film.
3. When did he arrive?
4. I bought a new car.
5. Where did you live?
6. I played tennis.
7. Where did you work before?
8. Did they come for lunch?
9. Did we study this last year?
10. They drank coffee.
11. Did you see that film?
12. We ate dinner.
13. You didn't go out last night.
14. He studied.
15. What did you watch?
16. We didn't call you yesterday.
17. They didn't arrive on time.
18. It didn't rain.
19. We didn't drink beer.
20. You cleaned the kitchen.

Past Simple Form Other Verbs - Mixed Exercise 4

Make the past simple: positive, negative or question.

1. Where _____ (she / go)?
2. What _____ (you / do)?
3. He _____ (work) in a bank.
4. You _____ (not / call) me.
5. _____ (you / wear) your red dress?
6. He _____ (not / read) that book.
7. _____ (you / go)?
8. _____ (she / study) last night?
9. _____ (we / arrive) last?
10. Who _____ (you / meet)?
11. _____ (they / come) to the party?
12. She _____ (not / meet) him.
13. _____ (she / go)?
14. You _____ (meet) a friend.
15. Which _____ (you / like)?
16. I _____ (not / forget) your book.
17. What _____ (he / do) at the weekend?
18. She _____ (not / like) chocolate.
19. What _____ (you / buy) yesterday?
20. _____ (you / have) a good holiday?

Answers

1. Where did she go?
2. What did you do?
3. He worked in a bank.
4. You didn't call me.
5. Did you wear your red dress?
6. He didn't read that book.
7. Did you go?
8. Did she study last night?
9. Did we arrive last?
10. Who did you meet?
11. Did they come to the party?
12. She didn't meet him.
13. Did she go?
14. You met a friend.
15. Which did you like?
16. I didn't forget your book.
17. What did he do at the weekend?
18. She didn't like chocolate.
19. What did you buy yesterday?
20. Did you have a good holiday?

Eighteenth lesson 18: Verb to be in future

Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1-*Positive*

Pronoun + verb to be + noun

I.....will be.....doctor
You.....will be.....doctor
He.....will be.....doctor
She.....will be.....doctor
It.....will be.....doctor
We.....will be.....doctors
You.....will be.....doctors
They.....will bedoctors

2-*Negative*

Pronoun + verb to be+negative "not" + noun

I.....will be.....not.....doctor
You.....will be.....not.....doctor
He.....will be.....not....doctor
She.....will be.....not.....doctor
It.....will be.....not.....doctor
We.....will be.....not.....doctors
You.....will be.....not.....doctors
They.....will be.....not.....doctors

3-*Interrogation*

verb to be+ pronoun + noun ?

Will i be doctor?
Yes you will be
/no you will be not

Will you be doctor?
Yes i will be
/ no i will be not

Will he be doctor?
Yes he will be
/no he will be not

Will she be doctor?
Yes she will be
/no she will be not

Will it be doctor?
Yes it will be
/no it will be not

Will we be doctors?
Yes you will be
/no you will be not

Will you be doctors?
Yes we will be
/no we will be not

Will they be doctors?
Yes they will be
/no they will be not

Nineteenth lesson: Verb to do in future

Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1-*Positive*

work

Pronoun + verb to do + object

I.....will work.....in company
You.....will work.....in company
He.....will work.....in company
She..... will work.....in company
It.....will work.....in company
We.....will work.....in company
You..... will work.....in company
They.....will work.....in company

2-*Negative:

will not = won't

to have

Pronoun + negative + verb to do + object

I.....*will not*have...responsible house
You...*will not*have..responsible house
He....*will not*have..responsible house
She...*will not*have...responsible house
It.....*will not*have...responsible house
We....*will not*have...responsible house
You...*won't*have..responsible house
They..*won't*have...responsible house

3- *Interrogation:

to have

Will + Pronoun + verb to do infinitive + object ?

1- will I have money ?

Yes you will

No you will not

2- will you have money?

Yes i will

No you will not

3- will he have money ?

Yes he will

No he will not

4- will she have money ?

Yes she will

No she will not

5- will it have money ?

Yes it will

No it will not

6- will we have money ?

Yes you will

No you will not

7- will you have money ?

Yes we will

No we will not

8- will they have money ?

Yes they will

No they will not

4-*Different between present continuous and future simple*

I **will** go to school

50 في مئة تمشي مدرسة او 50 في مئة مغاديش تمشي
يعنى غير مؤكد في future simple

I'm **going** to school **now**

يعنى مؤكد مئة في مئة تمشي مدرسة في present
continuous

كملاحظة دائما زمان لي فيه continuous فهو
زمان مؤكد

Future Simple (Will) Positive Exercise

Make the future simple positive:

1. A: "There's someone at the door."
B: "I _____ (get) it."
2. Joan thinks the Conservatives _____ (win) the next election.
3. A: "I'm moving house tomorrow."
B: "I _____ (come) and help you."
4. If she passes the exam, she _____ (be) very happy.
5. I _____ (be) there at four o'clock, I promise.
6. A: "I'm cold."
B: "I _____ (turn) on the fire."
7. A: "She's late."
B: "Don't worry she _____ (come)."
8. The meeting _____ (take) place at 6 p.m.
9. If you eat all of that cake, you _____ (feel) sick.
10. They _____ (be) at home at 10 o'clock.

Answers

(it doesn't matter if you write 'will' or 'll)

1. A: "There's someone at the door."
B: "I'll get it."
2. Joan thinks the Conservatives will win the next election.
3. A: "I'm moving house tomorrow."
B: "I'll come and help you."
4. If she passes the exam, she'll be very happy.
5. I'll be there at four o'clock, I promise.
6. A: "I'm cold."
B: "I'll turn on the fire."
7. A: "She's late."
B: "Don't worry she'll come."
8. The meeting will take place at 6 p.m.
9. If you eat all of that cake, you'll feel sick.
10. They'll be at home at 10 o'clock.

Future Simple Negative Exercise

Make the future simple negative:

1. I'm afraid I _____ (not / be) able to come tomorrow.
2. Because of the train strike, the meeting _____ (not / take) place at 9 o'clock.
3. A: "Go and tidy your room."
B: "I _____ (not / do) it!"
4. If it rains, we _____ (not / go) to the beach.
5. In my opinion, she _____ (not / pass) the exam.
6. A: "I'm driving to the party, would you like a lift?"
B: "Okay, I _____ (not / take) the bus, I'll come with you."
7. He _____ (not / buy) the car, if he can't afford it.
8. I've tried everything, but he _____ (not / eat).
9. According to the weather forecast, it _____ (not / snow) tomorrow.
10. A: "I'm really hungry."
B: "In that case we _____ (not / wait) for John."

Answers

(you can use 'won't' or 'will not')

1. I'm afraid I won't be able to come tomorrow.
2. Because of the train strike, the meeting won't take place at 9 o'clock.
3. A: "Go and tidy your room."
B: "I won't do it!"
4. If it rains, we won't go to the beach.
5. In my opinion, she won't pass the exam.
6. A: "I'm driving to the party, would you like a lift?"
B: "Okay, I won't take the bus, I'll come with you."
7. He won't buy the car, if he can't afford it.
8. I've tried everything, but he won't eat.
9. According to the weather forecast, it won't snow tomorrow.
10. A: "I'm really hungry."
B: "In that case we won't wait for John."

Future Simple Questions Exercise

Make future simple questions:

1. _____ (they / come) tomorrow?
2. When _____ (you / get) back?
3. If you lose your job, what _____ (you / do)?
4. In your opinion, _____ (she / be) a good teacher?
5. What time _____ (the sun / set) today?
6. _____ (she / get) the job, do you think?
7. _____ (David / be) at home this evening?
8. What _____ (the weather / be) like tomorrow?
9. There's someone at the door, _____ (you / get) it?
10. How _____ (he / get) here?

Answers

1. Will they come tomorrow?
2. When will you get back?
3. If you lose your job, what will you do?
4. In your opinion, will she be a good teacher?
5. What time will the sun set today?
6. Will she get the job, do you think?
7. Will David be at home this evening?
8. What will the weather be like tomorrow?
9. There's someone at the door, will you get it?
10. How will he get here?

Present Simple or Simple Future

Put the verb into either the present simple or the simple future tense.

1. I'll call you when I _____ (arrive) at my hotel.
2. He _____ (text) you as soon as he's on the bus.
3. Let's eat dinner when John _____ (get) here.
4. Julie _____ (be) late tomorrow evening, so I've booked a table at a restaurant for 10pm.
5. As soon as I _____ (be) able to, I'm going to get a new job.
6. Please wait here until the nurse _____ (call) you.
7. I _____ (get) up early tomorrow morning and finish the report then.
8. Before you _____ (leave), please make sure you've locked the door.
9. She _____ (let) us know later, when she's ready to leave.
10. I must clean the kitchen before my mother _____ (get) here.
11. I _____ (come) to meet you at the station next weekend.
12. I _____ (wait) until you're finished – then we can go.
13. John will study until he _____ (know) all the answers.
14. She thinks that it _____ (rain) next weekend.
15. What do you want to do after the class _____ (finish)?
16. I think that the Democrats _____ (win) the next election.
17. Jenny will come here after she _____ (finish) work.
18. She's going to look for a job as soon as she _____ (arrive) in London.
19. I _____ (give) up smoking!
20. She _____ (send) me an email before she leaves the office later today.

Answers

1. I'll call you when I arrive at my hotel.
2. He'll text you as soon as he's on the bus.
3. Let's eat dinner when John gets here.
4. Julie will be late tomorrow evening, so I've booked a table at a restaurant for 9pm.
5. As soon as I am able to, I'm going to get a new job.
6. Please wait here until the nurse calls you.
7. I'll get up early tomorrow morning and finish the report then.
8. Before you leave, please make sure you've locked the door.
9. She'll let us know later, when she's ready to leave.
10. I must clean the kitchen before my mother gets here.
11. I'll come to meet you at the station next weekend.
12. I'll wait until you're finished – then we can go.
13. John will study until he knows all the answers.
14. She thinks that it will rain next weekend.
15. What do you want to do after the class finishes?
16. I think that the Democrats will win the next election.
17. Jenny will come here after she finishes work.
18. She's going to look for a job as soon as she arrives in London.
19. I will give up smoking!
20. She'll send me an email before she leaves the office later today.

Twenty lesson 20: future continuous

1*Positive*

Pronoun + verb to be + verb + ing

I.....will be.....going to school next year

You.....will be.....going to school next year

He.....will be.....going to school next year

She.....will be.....going to school next year

It.....will be.....going to school next year

We.....will be.....going to school next year

You.....will be.....going to school next year

They.....will begoing to school next year

2*Negative*

Pronoun + verb to be + negative + verb + ing

I.....will not be.....going to school next year

You.....will not begoing to school next year

He.....will not be.....going to school next year

She.....will not begoing to school next year

It.....will not be.....going to school next year

We.....will not be.....going to school next year

You.....will not be.....going to school next year

They.....will not begoing to school next year

3*interrogation*

verb to be+ pronoun + verb +ing ?

Will i be going to school next year ?

Yes you will be

/no you will be not

Will you be going to school next year ?

Yes i will be

/ no i will be not

Will he be going to school next year ?

Yes he will be

/no he will be not

Will she be going to school next year ?

Yes she will be

/no she will be not

Will it be going to school next year ?

Yes it will be

/no it will be not

Will we be going to school next year ?

Yes you will be

/no you will be not

Will you be going to school next year ?

Yes we will be

/no we will be not

Will they be going to school next year ?

Yes they will be

/no they will be not

Future Continuous Exercise

Make the positive future continuous.

At three o'clock tomorrow...

1. I _____ (work) in my office.
2. You _____ (lie) on the beach.
3. He _____ (wait) for the train.
4. She _____ (shop) in New York.
5. It _____ (rain).
6. We _____ (get) ready to go out.
7. They _____ (meet) their parents.
8. He _____ (study) in the library.
9. She _____ (exercise) at the gym.
10. I _____ (sleep).

Answers

At three o'clock tomorrow...

1. I'll be working in my office.
2. You'll be lying on the beach.
3. He'll be waiting for the train.
4. She'll be shopping in New York.
5. It'll be raining.
6. We'll be getting ready to go out.
7. They'll be meeting their parents.
8. He'll be studying in the library.
9. She'll be exercising at the gym.
10. I'll be sleeping.

Future Continuous Exercise

Make the negative future continuous.

When she arrives,

1. I _____ (read).
2. You _____ (sleep), will you?
3. We _____ (work).
4. Julie _____ (watch) a film.
5. It _____ (snow).
6. Ann and Tom _____ (cook).
7. He _____ (play) computer games.
8. I _____ (study).
9. You _____ (cry).
10. David _____ (us) the internet.

Answers

When she arrives,

1. I won't be reading.
2. You won't be sleeping, will you?
3. We won't be working.
4. Julie won't be watching a film.
5. It won't be snowing.
6. Ann and Tom won't be cooking.
7. He won't be playing computer games.
8. I won't be studying.
9. You won't be crying.
10. David won't be using the internet.

Future Continuous Exercise

Make future continuous 'yes / no' questions.

When the boss comes,

1. _____ (I / sit) here?
2. _____ (John / us) the computer?
3. _____ (Jane and Luke / discuss) the new project?
4. _____ (we / work) hard?
5. _____ (you / talk) on the telephone?
6. _____ (she / send) an email?
7. _____ (they / have) a meeting?
8. _____ (he / eat) lunch?
9. _____ (you / type)?
10. _____ (he / make) coffee?

Make 'wh-' future continuous questions.

At 8pm,

1. (where / I / wait?)

2. (what / you / do?)

3. (why / he / study?)

4. (how / she / travel?)

5. (who / they / meet?)

6. (where / we / eat?)

7. (what / you / watch?)

8. (why / he / drive?)

9. (what / she / cook?)

10. (why / they / sleep?)



Answers

'Yes / no' questions

When the boss comes,

1. Will I be sitting here?
2. Will John be using the computer?
3. Will Jane and Luke be discussing the new project?
4. Will we be working hard?
5. Will you be talking on the telephone?
6. Will she be sending an email?
7. Will they be having a meeting?
8. Will he be eating lunch?
9. Will you be typing?
10. Will he be making coffee?

'Wh-' questions

At 8pm,

1. Where will I be waiting?
2. What will you be doing?
3. Why will he be studying?
4. How will she be travelling?
5. Who will they be meeting?
6. Where will we be eating?
7. What will you be watching?
8. Why will he be driving?
9. What will she be cooking?
10. Why will they be sleeping?

Twenty-first lesson 21: Verb to be in past continuous

Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1-*Positive*

Pronoun + verb to be + verb + ing

I.....was.....going to school last year

You.....were.....going to school last year

He.....was.....going to school last year

She.....was.....going to school last year

It.....was.....going to school last year

We.....were.....going to school last year

You.....were.....going to school last year

They.....were.....going to school last year

2-*Negative*

Pronoun + verb to be+ negative + verb + ing

I.....was not.....going to school last year

You.....were not.....going to school last year

He.....was not.....going to school last year

She.....was not.....going to school last year

It.....was not.....going to school last year

We.....were not.....going to school last year

You.....were not.....going to school last year

They.....were not.....going to school last year

3-*Interrogation*

verb to be+ pronoun + verb + ing?

Was i going to school last year ?

Yes you were

/no you were not

Were you going to school last year ?

Yes i was

/ no i was not

Was he going to school last year ?

Yes he was

/no he was not

Was she going to school last year ?

Yes she was

/no she was not

Was it going to school last year ?

Yes it was

/no it was not

Were we going to school last year ?

Yes you were

/no you were not

Were you going to school last year ?

Yes we were

/no we were not

Were they going to school last year ?

Yes they were

/no they were not?

Past Continuous Positive and Negative

Make the past continuous.

1. (Julie / sleep at three o'clock)

2. (you / study at three o'clock)

3. (Luke / read at three o'clock)

4. (I / work at three o'clock)

5. (they / eat chocolate at three o'clock)

6. (John / play tennis at three o'clock)

7. (we / watch TV at three o'clock)

8. (he / use the Internet at three o'clock)

9. (you / cook lunch at three o'clock)

10. (we / travel to London at three o'clock)

11. (Mrs. Brown / not / walk in the garden when the murder happened)

12. (Mr. Black / not / work in his study when the murder happened)

13. (Miss Jones / not / talk to Mr. White when the murder happened)

14. (you / not / play cards when the murder happened)

15. (Dr. Ford / not / read in his room when the murder happened)

16. (Mr. and Mrs. Green / not / eat in the dining room when the murder happened)

17. (Mr. Blue / not / drink coffee in the library when the murder happened)

18. (The maid / not / clean the bedrooms when the murder happened)

19. (I / not / listen to music when the murder happened)

20. (The dogs / not / play outside when the murder happened)

Answers

1. Julie was sleeping.
2. You were studying.
3. Luke was reading.
4. I was working.
5. They were eating chocolate.
6. John was playing tennis.
7. We were watching TV.
8. He was using the Internet.
9. You were cooking lunch.
10. We were travelling to London. (in the USA 'traveling')
11. Mrs. Brown wasn't walking in the garden.
12. Mr. Black wasn't working in his study.
13. Miss Jones wasn't talking to Mr. White.
14. You weren't playing cards.
15. Dr. Ford wasn't reading in his room.
16. Miss Green and her brother weren't eating in the dining room.
17. Mr. Blue wasn't drinking coffee in the library.
18. The maid wasn't cleaning the bedrooms.
19. I wasn't listening to music.
20. The dogs weren't playing outside.

Past Continuous Questions

Make past continuous 'yes / no' questions.

When you arrived at the party...

1. (Alan / dance?)

2. (Susie / drink gin?)

3. (John and Ann / sing?)

4. (Luke / talk to the girls?)

5. (Jodie / put on make up?)

6. (we / cook?)

7. (Jane / play guitar?)

8. (David / read a book?)

9. (Francis / sit in the corner?)

10. (everybody / have fun?)

Make past continuous 'wh' questions.

When I saw you and Lucy last night...

11. (where / you / go?)

12. (what / you / do?)

13. (who / you / meet?)

14. (what / Lucy / wear?)

15. (what / you / eat?)

16. (what / you / drink?)

17. (why / Lucy / smoke?)

18. (who / you / talk to?)

19. (what / you / carry?)

20. (how / Lucy / feel?)

Answers

When you arrived at the party...

1. Was Alan dancing?
2. Was Susie drinking gin?
3. John and Ann singing?
4. Was Luke talking to the girls?
5. Was Jodie putting on make up?
6. Were we cooking?
7. Was Jane playing guitar?
8. Were David and George reading?
9. Was Francis sitting in the corner?
10. Was everybody having fun?

When I saw you and Lucy last night...

11. Where were you going?
12. What were you doing?
13. Who were you meeting?
14. What was Lucy wearing?
15. What were you eating?
16. What were you drinking?
17. Why was Lucy smoking?
18. Who were you talking to?
19. What were you carrying?
20. How was Lucy feeling?

Past Continuous Mixed Exercise 1

Make the past continuous.

1. (he / cook)

2. (she / play cards?)

3. (I / not / cry)

4. (you / not / feel well)

5. (where / I / go when I met you?)

6. (she / not / sleeping at midnight)

7. (I / work?)

8. (you / sleep when I got home?)

9. (it / rain at lunchtime)

10. (what / you / do?)

11. (why / she / run?)

12. (you / not / read)

13. (how / we / do at that time?)

14. (he / not / watch a film at 3pm)

15. (I / do my homework at eight o'clock)

16. (where / it / rain?)

17. (you / shop when I called you)

18. (she / eat dinner when we arrived)

19. (he / live in Tokyo at the time?)

20. (it / rain?)

Answers

1. He was cooking.
2. Was she playing cards?
3. I wasn't crying.
4. You weren't feeling well.
5. Where was I going when I met you?
6. She wasn't sleeping at midnight.
7. Was I working?
8. Were you sleeping when I got home?
9. Was it raining at lunchtime?
10. What were you doing?
11. Why was she running?
12. You weren't reading.
13. How were we doing at that time?
14. He wasn't watching a film at 3pm.
15. I was doing my homework at eight o'clock.
16. Where was it raining?
17. You were shopping when I called you.
18. She was eating dinner when we arrived.
19. Was he living in Tokyo at the time?
20. Was it raining?

Past Continuous Mixed Exercise 2

Make the past continuous.

1. (they / take the exam?)

2. (when / he / work there?)

3. (you / make dinner?)

4. (they / drink coffee when you arrived?)

5. (when / we / sleep?)

6. (they / study last night)

7. (we / talk when the accident happened)

8. (he / not / exercise enough)

9. (I / talk too much?)

10. (it / not / snow)

11. (how / they / feel?)

12. (they / not / talk)

13. (where / I / stay?)

14. (why / he / study on a Saturday night?)

15. (I / go to school when you saw me)

16. (you / sleep at 6am)

17. (she / work when I called)

18. (we / not / leave when you called)

19. (I / not / stay in a hotel)

20. (we / make too much noise?)

Answers

1. Were they taking the exam?
2. When was he working there?
3. Were you making dinner?
4. Were they drinking coffee when you arrived?
5. When were we sleeping?
6. They were studying last night.
7. We were talking when the accident happened.
8. He wasn't exercising enough.
9. Was I talking too much?
10. It wasn't snowing.
11. How were they feeling?
12. They weren't talking.
13. Where was I staying?
14. Why was he studying on a Saturday night?
15. I was going to school when you saw me.
16. You were sleeping at 6am.
17. She was working when I called.
18. We weren't leaving when you called.
19. I wasn't staying in a hotel.
20. Were we making too much noise?

Twenty-second lessons 22: past perfect

Positive / Negative / Interrogation

1. Positive

Got = gotten : past participant

I had got bacculaureate

You had got bacculaureate

He had got bacculaureate

She had got bacculaureate

It had got bacculaureate

We had got bacculaureate

You had got bacculaureate

They had got bacculaureate

2. Negative

I hadn't worked in company

You hadn't worked in company

He hadn't worked in company

She hadn't worked in company

It hadn't worked in company

We hadn't worked in company

You hadn't worked in company

They had never been in Paris

3. Interrogation

Had you traveled to Germany?

Yes i had

No i hadn't

Had i got money from bank CIH ?

Yes you had

No you hadn't

Had she started working in Michigan?

Yes she had

No she hadn't

Had he gone to hospital?

Yes he had

No she hadn't

Had cat eaten its food ?

Yes it had

No it hadn't

Had we got black house ?

Yes you had

No you hadn't

Had you played in Stadium big TANGER?

Yes we had

No we hadn't

Had they reached to moon ?

Yes they had

No they hadn't

Past Perfect Positive and Negative

Make the past perfect.

1. When I arrived at the cinema, the film _____ (start).
2. She _____ (live) in China before she went to Thailand.
3. After they _____ (eat) the shellfish, they began to feel sick.
4. If you _____ (listen) to me, you would have got the job.
5. Julie didn't arrive until after I _____ (leave).
6. When we _____ (finish) dinner, we went out.
7. The garden was dead because it _____ (be) dry all summer.
8. He _____ (meet) her before somewhere.
9. We were late for the plane because we _____ (forgot) our passports.
10. She told me that she _____ (study) a lot before the exam.
11. The grass was yellow because it _____ (not / rain) all summer.
12. The lights went off because we _____ (not / pay) the electricity bill.
13. The children _____ (not / do) their homework, so they were in trouble.
14. They _____ (not / eat) so we went to a restaurant.
15. We couldn't go into the concert because we _____ (not / bring) our tickets.
16. She said that she _____ (not / visit) the UK before.
17. Julie and Anne _____ (not / meet) before the party.
18. I _____ (not / have) breakfast when he arrived
19. He _____ (not / use) email before, so I showed him how to use it.
20. You _____ (not / study) for the test, so you were very nervous.

Answers

1. When I arrived at the cinema, the film had started.
2. She had lived in China before she went to Thailand.
3. After they had eaten the shellfish, they began to feel sick.
4. If you had listened to me, you would have got the job.
5. Julie didn't arrive until after I had left.
6. When we had finished dinner, we went out.
7. The garden was dead because it had been dry all summer.
8. He had met her before somewhere.
9. We were late for the plane because we had forgotten our passports.
10. She told me that she had studied a lot before the exam.
11. The grass was yellow because it hadn't rained all summer.
12. The lights went off because we hadn't paid the electricity bill.
13. The children hadn't done their homework, so they were in trouble.
14. They hadn't eaten so we went to a restaurant.
15. We couldn't go into the concert because we hadn't brought our tickets.
16. She said that she hadn't visited the UK before.
17. Julie and Anne hadn't met before the party.
18. I hadn't had breakfast when he arrived.
19. He hadn't used email before, so I showed him how to use it.
20. You hadn't studied for the test, so you were very nervous.

Past Perfect Questions

Make past perfect simple 'yes / no' or 'wh-' questions.

1. _____ (you / go) there before we went together?
2. _____ (she / see) the film already?
3. Why _____ (he / forgot) about the meeting?
4. _____ (it / be) cold all week?
5. _____ (I / read) the book before the class?
6. When she arrived, _____ (we / eat) already?
7. Where _____ (you / be) when I saw you?
8. _____ (they / travel) by bullet train before?
9. _____ (John / meet) Lucy before they went on holiday together?
10. _____ (you / do) your homework before I saw you?
11. Where _____ (she / work)?
12. _____ (I / pay) the bill before we left?
13. _____ (we / visit) my parents already that winter?
14. When you called, _____ (they / eat) dinner?
15. How _____ (he / manage) to fix the cooker?
16. _____ (my sister / be) sick for a long time?
17. How much _____ (she / study) before the exam?
18. What _____ (you / cook) for dinner that night?
19. When _____ (they / arrive)?
20. How many coffees _____ (she / drink) before the interview?

Answers

1. Had you gone there before we went together?
2. Had she seen the film already?
3. Why had he forgotten about the meeting?
4. Had it been cold all week?
5. Had I read the book before the class?
6. When she arrived, had we eaten already?
7. Where had you been when I saw you?
8. Had they travelled by bullet train before?
9. Had John met Lucy before they went on holiday together?
10. Had you done your homework already?
11. Where had she worked?
12. Had I paid the bill before we left?
13. Had we visited my parents already that winter?
14. When you called, had they eaten dinner?
15. How had he managed to fix the cooker?
16. Had my sister been sick for a long time?
17. How much had she studied before the exam?
18. What had you cooked for dinner that night?
19. When had they arrived?
20. How many coffees had she drunk before the interview?

Past Perfect and Past Simple

Choose the past perfect or the past simple.

1. We had already eaten when John _____
(come) home.
2. Last year Juan _____ (pass) all his exams.
3. When I _____ (get) to the airport, I
discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I _____ (buy) some milk
and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I _____
(forgot) my credit card.
6. When we _____ (arrive) at the station, the train
had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone _____
(break) into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone
_____ (eat) all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we
_____ (get) married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John
_____ (clean) the kitchen.
11. It _____ (not / rain) all summer, so the grass was
completely dead.
12. When he _____ (arrive) at the party, Julie had
just left.

13. After arriving home, I realised I _____
(not / buy) any milk.
14. The laundry was wet. It _____ (rain) while I was
out.
15. William felt ill last night because he
_____ (eat) too many cakes.
16. Keiko _____ (meet) William last
September.

© www.perfect-english-grammar.com
May be freely copied for personal or classroom use.



17. First, I tidied the flat, then I _____ (sit) down and
had a cup of coffee.
18. John _____ (play) the piano when he was a child,
but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains, the sun was shining but the ground was white. It
_____ (snow) during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John
_____ (have) a party.

Answers

1. We had already eaten when John came home.
2. Last year Juan passed all his exams.
3. When I got to the airport, I discovered I had forgotten my passport.
4. I went to the library, then I bought some milk and went home.
5. I opened my handbag to find that I had forgotten my credit card.
6. When we arrived at the station, the train had already left.
7. We got home to find that someone had broken into the house.
8. I opened the fridge to find someone had eaten all my chocolate.
9. I had known my husband for three years when we got married.
10. Julie was very pleased to see that John had cleaned the kitchen.
11. It hadn't rained all summer, so the grass was completely dead.
12. When he arrived at the party, Julie had just left.
13. After arriving home, I realised I hadn't bought any milk.
14. The laundry was wet. It had rained while I was out.
15. William felt ill last night because he had eaten too many cakes.
16. Keiko met William last September.
17. First, I tidied the flat, then I sat down and had a cup of coffee.
18. John played the piano when he was a child, but he doesn't play now.
19. When I opened the curtains, the sun was shining but the ground was white. It had snowed during the night.
20. When Julie got home from her holiday, her flat was a mess. John had had a party.

Twenty-third lesson 23: future perfect

1. Positive

Got = gotten : past participant

I will have got bacculaureate

You will have got bacculaureate

He will have got bacculaureate

She will have got bacculaureate

It will have got bacculaureate

We will have got bacculaureate

You will have got bacculaureate

They will have got bacculaureate

2. Negative

I i will haven't worked in company

You will haven't worked in company

He will haven't worked in company

She will haven't worked in company

It will haven't worked in company

We will haven't worked in company

You will haven't worked in company

They will have never been in Paris

3. Interrogation

Will have you traveled to Germany?

Yes i will

No i will not

Will have i got money from bank CIH ?

Yes you will

No you won't

will have she started working in Michigan?

Yes she will

No she will

Will have he gone to hospital?

Yes he will

No she won't

Will have cat eaten its food ?

Yes it will

No it won't

Will have we got black house ?

Yes you will

No you won't

Will have you played in Stadium big TANGER?

Yes we will

No we won't

Will have they reached to moon ?

Yes they will

No they won't

Future Perfect Simple Exercise

Make the future perfect positive.

By 10pm tonight...

1. I _____ (finish) this report.
2. We _____ (have) dinner.
3. She _____ (leave) Paris.
4. John _____ (meet) Lucy.
5. They _____ (take) the exam.
6. It _____ (stop) snowing.
7. I _____ (read) all of this book.
8. You _____ (fall) asleep.
9. She _____ (watch) the film.
10. He _____ (arrive).

Answers

By 10pm tonight...

1. I'll have finished this report.
2. We'll have had dinner.
3. She'll have left Paris.
4. John will have met Lucy.
5. They'll have taken the exam.
6. It'll have stopped snowing.
7. I'll have read all of this book.
8. You'll have fallen asleep.
9. She'll have watched the film.
10. He'll have arrived.

Future Perfect Simple Exercise

Make the future perfect negative.

I'm sorry, by next week,

1. I _____ (finish) the report.
2. Julia _____ (send) the emails.
3. John _____ (clean) the office.
4. We _____ (order) new stock.
5. They _____ (write) the article.
6. I _____ (meet) the customers.
7. She _____ (organise) the meeting.
8. He _____ (call) Mr Smith.
9. We _____ (read) the documents.
10. You _____ (receive) the prices.

Answers

I'm sorry, by next week,

1. I won't have finished the report.
2. Julia won't have sent the emails.
3. John won't have cleaned the office.
4. We won't have ordered new stock.
5. They won't have written the article.
6. I won't have met the customers.
7. She won't have organised the meeting.
8. He won't have called Mr Smith.
9. We won't have read the documents.
10. You won't have received the prices.

Future Perfect Simple Exercise

Make future perfect questions.

1. _____ (she / arrive) by 10 o'clock?
2. _____ (you / eat) by 6?
3. _____ (it / stop) raining by tomorrow morning?
4. _____ (we / watch) the film by 7?
5. _____ (she / arrive) by Friday?
6. When _____ (you / finish) the report?
7. What _____ (you / do) by the end of the day?
8. Why _____ (she / leave) by Tuesday?
9. When _____ (you / read) my book?
10. When _____ (we / be) here for six months?

Answers

1. Will she have arrived by 10 o'clock?
2. Will you have eaten by 6?
3. Will it have stopped raining by tomorrow morning?
4. Will we have watched the film by 7?
5. Will she have arrived by Friday?
6. When will you have finished the report?
7. What will you have done by the end of the day?
8. Why will she have left by Tuesday?
9. When will you have read my book?
10. When will we have been here for six months?

Future Perfect

Make the future perfect. Choose positive, negative or question.

1. (I / leave by six)

2. (you / finish the report by the deadline?)

3. (when / we / do everything?)

4. (she / finish her exams by then, so we can go out for dinner)

5. (you / read the book before the next class)

6. (she / not / finish work by seven)

7. (when / you / complete the work?)

8. (they / arrive by dinnertime)

9. (we / be in London for three years next week)

10. (she / get home by lunchtime?)

11. (they / not / go at six)

12. (you / do everything by seven?)

13. (we / not / eat before we come, so we'll be hungry)

14. (he / finish his exams when we go on holiday?)

15. (we / arrive by the time it gets dark?)

1

©perfect-english-grammar.com
May be freely copied for personal or classroom use.



16. (how long / you / know your boyfriend when you get married?)

17. (he / not / complete the project by July)

18. (I / not / finish the essay before the weekend)

19. (why / she / finish the cleaning by six?)

20. (how long / you / be in this company when you retire?)

Answers

1. I will have left by six.
2. Will you have finished the report by the deadline?
3. When will we have done everything?
4. She will have finished her exams by then, so we can go out for dinner.
5. You will have read the book before the next class.
6. She won't have finished work by seven.
7. When will you have completed the work?
8. They will have arrived by dinnertime.
9. We will have been in London for three years next week.
10. Will she have got home by lunchtime?
11. They won't have gone at six.
12. Will you have done everything by seven?
13. We won't have eaten before we come, so we'll be hungry.
14. Will he have finished her exams when we go on holiday?
15. Will we have arrived by the time it gets dark?
16. How long will you have known your boyfriend when you get married?
17. He won't have completed the project by July.
18. I won't have finished the essay before the weekend.
19. Why will she have finished the cleaning by six?
20. How long will you have been in this company when you retire?

Mixed Future Tenses Exercise 1

Make the future tenses. It could be a positive sentence, a negative sentence or a question.

1. future simple (She / win the competition?)

2. future continuous (She / wait when we arrive)

3. future perfect (By next week I / finish this work)

4. future perfect continuous (I / live here for one year next week)

5. future simple (Who / pass the exam?)

6. future perfect continuous (She / study so she will be tired)

7. future continuous (How / you / get home?)

8. future simple (I / come later)

9. future perfect (She / catch the train by 3pm)

10. future simple (It / rain tomorrow)

11. future perfect (We / arrive in Bermuda by this time tomorrow)

12. future continuous (John / sleep at 4am)

13. future perfect (I / not / complete the report by 5pm tomorrow)

14. future perfect continuous (How long / you / see your boyfriend when you get married?)

15. future perfect (You / have dinner by 8pm?)

16.future continuous (It / rain in Scotland next week)

17.future perfect (When / she / sell the house?)

18.future simple (She / not / do her homework)

19.future perfect continuous (How long / you / work here when you retire?)

20.future perfect (When / you / do everything you want to?)

21.future simple (They / not / be able to arrive on time)

22.future continuous (We / not / eat dinner at that time)

23.future perfect continuous (He / not / work here for three years next month)

24.future continuous (She / take her car to the party?)

25.future perfect continuous (They / not / exercise before we meet)

26.future simple (He / not / be happy)

27.future perfect continuous (What / you / do before dinner?)

28.future simple (You / drive here?)

29.future continuous (She / not / lie on the beach yet)

30.future perfect continuous (They / work all day so I will cook)

31.future continuous (What time / you / arrive?)

32.future perfect (He / not / finish the cleaning by the time she gets home)

Answers

1. Will she win the competition?
2. She will be waiting when we arrive.
3. By next week I will have finished this work.
4. I will have been living here for one year next week.
5. Who will pass the exam?
6. She will have been studying so she will be tired.
7. How will you be getting home?
8. I will come later.
9. She will have caught the train by 3pm.
10. It will rain tomorrow.
11. We will have arrived in Bermuda by this time tomorrow.
12. John will be sleeping at 4am.
13. I will not have completed the report by 5pm tomorrow.
14. How long will you have been seeing your boyfriend when you get married?
15. Will you have had dinner by 8pm?
16. It will be raining in Scotland next week.
17. When will she have sold the house?
18. She will not do her homework.
19. How long will you have been working here when you retire?
20. When will you have done everything you want to?
21. They will not be able to arrive on time.
22. We will not be eating dinner at that time.
23. He will not have been working here for three years next month.
24. Will she be taking her car to the party?
25. They will not have been exercising before we meet.
26. He will not be happy.
27. What will you have been doing before dinner?
28. Will you drive here?
29. She will not be lying on the beach yet.
30. They will have been working all day so I will cook.
31. What time will you be arriving?
32. He will not have finished the cleaning by the time she gets home.

Twenty-fourth lesson 24: conditional

***Part 1* We can make a zero conditional sentence with two present simple verbs (one in the 'if clause' and one in the 'main clause'):**

If + present simple, ... present simple.

This conditional is used when the result will always happen. So, if water reaches 100 degrees, it always boils. It's a fact. I'm talking in general, not about one particular situation. The result of the 'if clause' is always the main clause. The 'if' in this conditional can usually be replaced by 'when' without changing the meaning.

For example: If water reaches 100 degrees, it boils. (It is always true, there can't be a different result sometimes). If I eat peanuts, I am sick. (This is true only for me, maybe, not for everyone, but it's still true that I'm sick every time I eat peanuts)

Here are some more examples:

If people eat too much, they get fat.

If you touch a fire, you get burned.

People die if they don't eat.

You get water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen.

Snakes bite if they are scared

If babies are hungry, they cry

See this page about the first conditional to learn about the difference between the first and the zero conditionals. The first conditional is about a specific situation, but the zero is talking in general.

***Part 2* The first conditional has the present simple after 'if', then the future simple in the other clause:**

if + present simple, ... will + infinitive

It's used to talk about things which might happen in the future. Of course, we can't know what will happen in the future, but this describes possible things, which could easily come true.

If it rains, I won't go to the park.

If I study today, I'll go to the party tonight.

If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes.

She'll be late if the train is delayed.

She'll miss the bus if she doesn't leave soon.

If I see her, I'll tell her.

First vs. Zero Conditional:

The first conditional describes a particular situation, whereas the zero conditional describes what happens in general.

For example (zero conditional): **if you sit in the sun, you get burned** (here I'm talking about every time a person sits in the sun - the burning is a natural consequence of the sitting)

But (first conditional): **if you sit in the sun, you'll get burned** (here I'm talking about what will happen today, another day might be different)

First vs. Second Conditional:

The first conditional describes things that I think are likely to happen in the future, whereas the second conditional talks about things that I don't think will really happen. It's subjective; it depends on my point of view.

For example (first conditional): **If she studies harder, she'll pass the exam** (I think it's possible she will study harder and so she'll pass)

But (second conditional): **If she studied harder, she would pass the exam** (I think that she won't study harder, or it's very unlikely, and so she won't pass)

***Part 3* The second conditional**
uses the past simple after if, then 'would' and the infinitive:

if + past simple, ...would + infinitive

(We can use 'were' instead of 'was' with 'I' and 'he/she/it'. This is mostly done in formal writing).

It has two uses.

First, we can use it to talk about things in the future that are probably not going to be true.

Maybe I'm imagining some dream for example.

If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house.
(I probably won't win the lottery)

If I met the Queen of England, I would say hello.

She would travel all over the world if she was rich.

She would pass the exam if she ever studied.
(She never studies, so this won't happen)

Second, we can use it to talk about something in the present which is impossible, because it's not true. Is that clear? Have a look at the examples:

If I had his number, I would call him. (I don't have his number now, so it's impossible for me to call him).

If I was with you, I wouldn't go out with that man.

How is this different from the first conditional?

This kind of conditional sentence is different from the first conditional because this is a lot more unlikely.

For example (second conditional): **If I had enough money I would buy a house with twenty bedrooms and a swimming pool** (I'm probably not going to have this much money, it's just a dream, not very real)

But (first conditional): **If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes** (It's much more likely that I'll have enough money to buy some shoes)

***Part 4* We make the third conditional by using the past perfect after 'if' and then 'would have' and the past participle in the second part of the sentence:**

if + past perfect, ...would + have + past participle

It talks about the past. It's used to describe a situation that didn't happen, and to imagine the result of this situation.

If she had studied, she would have passed the exam (but, really we know she didn't study and so she didn't pass)

If I hadn't eaten so much, I wouldn't have felt sick (but I did eat a lot, and so I did feel sick).

If we had taken a taxi, we wouldn't have missed the plane

She wouldn't have been tired if she had gone to bed earlier

She would have become a teacher if she had gone to university

He would have been on time for the interview if he had left the house at nine

Zero Conditional Exercise 1

Make sentences with the zero conditional.

For example:

(not / rain / the flowers / die)

If it doesn't rain, the flowers die.

1. (I / wake up late / I / be late for work)

2. (my husband / cook / he / burn the food)

3. (Julie / not wear a hat / she / get sunstroke)

4. (children / not eat well / they / not be healthy)

5. (you / mix water and electricity / you / get a shock)

6. (people / eat / too many sweets / they / get fat)

7. (you / smoke / you / get yellow fingers)

8. (children / play outside / they / not get overweight)

9. (you / heat ice / it / melt)

10. (I / speak to John / he / get annoyed)

11. (I / feel good the next day / I / go to bed early)

12. (lots of people / come / Jenny / have a party)

13. (she / buy expensive clothes / she / go shopping)

14. (my daughter / pass her exams / she / work hard)

15. (David / be sick / he / drink milk)

16. (the river / freeze / it / be very cold)

17. (I / like to visit the museums / I / be in a new city)

18. (I / cycle to work / the weather / be fine)

19. (my flatmate / clean it really well / she / clean the house)

20. (everybody / be grumpy / it / rain a lot)

Answers

1. If I wake up late, I'm late for work.
2. If my husband cooks, he burns the food.
3. If Julie doesn't wear a hat, she gets sunstroke.
4. If children don't eat well, they aren't healthy.
5. If you mix water and electricity, you get a shock.
6. If people eat too many sweets, they get fat.
7. If you smoke, you get yellow fingers.
8. If children play outside, they don't get overweight.
9. If you heat ice, it melts.
10. If I speak to John, he gets annoyed.
11. I feel good the next day if I go to bed early.
12. Lots of people come if Jenny has a party.
13. She buys expensive clothes if she goes shopping.
14. My daughter passes her exams if she works hard.
15. David is sick if he drinks milk.
16. The river freezes if it's very cold.
17. I like to visit the museums if I am in a new city.
18. I cycle to work if the weather is fine.
19. My flatmate cleans really well if she cleans the house.
20. Everybody is grumpy if it rains a lot.

First Conditional Exercise

Put the verb into the correct first conditional form.

1. If I _____ (go) out tonight, I _____ (go) to the cinema.
2. If you _____ (get) back late, I _____ (be) angry.
3. If we _____ (not / see) each other tomorrow, we _____
(see) each other next week.
4. If he _____ (come), I _____ (be) surprised.
5. If we _____ (wait) here, we _____ (be) late.
6. If we _____ (go) on holiday this summer, we _____ (go)
to Spain.
7. If the weather _____ (not / improve), we _____ (not /
have) a picnic.
8. If I _____ (not / go) to bed early, I _____ (be) tired
tomorrow.
9. If we _____ (eat) all this cake, we _____ (feel) sick.
10. If you _____ (not / want) to go out, I _____ (cook)
dinner at home.
11. I _____ (come) early if you _____ (want).
12. They _____ (go) to the party if they _____ (be) invited.
13. She _____ (stay) in London if she _____ (get) a job.
14. He _____ (not / get) a better job if he _____ (not / pass)
that exam.
15. I _____ (buy) a new dress if I _____ (have) enough
money.
16. She _____ (cook) dinner if you _____ (go) to the
supermarket.
17. They _____ (go) on holiday if they _____ (have) time.
18. We _____ (be) late if we _____ (not / hurry).
19. She _____ (take) a taxi if it _____ (rain).
20. I _____ (not / go) if you _____ (not / come) with me.

Answers

('ll = will, won't = will not)

1. If I go out tonight, I'll go to the cinema.
2. If you get back late, I'll be angry.
3. If we don't see each other tomorrow, we'll see each other next week.
4. If he comes, I'll be surprised.
5. If we wait here, we'll be late.
6. If we go on holiday this summer, we'll go to Spain.
7. If the weather doesn't improve, we won't have a picnic.
8. If I don't go to bed early, I'll be tired tomorrow.
9. If we eat all this cake, we'll feel sick.
10. If you don't want to go out, I'll cook dinner at home.
11. I'll come early if you want.
12. They'll go to the party if they are invited.
13. She'll stay in London if she gets a job.
14. He won't get a better job if he doesn't pass that exam.
15. I'll buy a new dress if I have enough money.
16. She'll cook dinner if you go to the supermarket.
17. They'll go on holiday if they have time.
18. We'll be late if we don't hurry.
19. She'll take a taxi if it rains.
20. I won't go if you don't come with me.

Second Conditional Exercise

Put the verb into the correct tense to make the second conditional.

1. If I _____ (be) you, I _____ (get) a new job.
2. If he _____ (be) younger, he _____ (travel) more.
3. If we _____ (not / be) friends, I _____ (be) angry with you.
4. If I _____ (have) enough money, I _____ (buy) a big house.
5. If she _____ (not / be) always so late, she _____ (be) promoted.
6. If we _____ (win) the lottery, we _____ (travel) the world.
7. If you _____ (have) a better job, we _____ (be) able to buy a new car
8. If I _____ (speak) perfect English, I _____ (have) a good job.
9. If we _____ (live) in Mexico, I _____ (speak) Spanish.
10. If she _____ (pass) the exam, she _____ (be) able to enter university.
11. She _____ (be) happier if she _____ (have) more friends.
12. We _____ (buy) a house if we _____ (decide) to stay here.
13. They _____ (have) more money if they _____ (not / buy) so many clothes

14. We _____ (come) to dinner if we _____ (have) time.
15. She _____ (call) him if she _____ (know) his number.
16. They _____ (go) to Spain on holiday if they _____ (like) hot weather.
17. She _____ (pass) the exam if she _____ (study) more.
18. I _____ (marry) someone famous if I _____ (be) a movie star.

1

© www.perfect-english-grammar.com
May be freely copied for personal or classroom use.



19. We never _____ (be) late again if we _____ (buy) a new car.
20. You _____ (lose) weight if you _____ (eat) less.

Answers

(remember: you can write would or 'd):

1. If I were you, I would get a new job.
2. If he were younger, he would travel more.
3. If we weren't friends, I would be angry with you.
4. If I had enough money, I would buy a big house.
5. If she weren't always so late, she would be promoted.
6. If we won the lottery, we would travel the world.
7. If you had a better job, we would be able to buy a new car
8. If I spoke perfect English, I would have a good job.
9. If we lived in Mexico, I would speak Spanish.
10. If she passed the exam, she would be able to enter university.
11. She would be happier if she had more friends.
12. We would buy a house if we decided to stay here.
13. They would have more money if they didn't buy so many clothes
14. We would come to dinner if we had time.
15. She would call him if she knew his number.
16. They would go to Spain on holiday if they liked hot weather.
17. She would pass the exam if she studied more.
18. I would marry someone famous if I were a movie star.
19. We would never be late again if we bought a new car.
20. You would lose weight if you ate less.

Third Conditionals

Put in the correct third conditional verb form.

1. If you _____ (not / be) late, we _____ (not / miss) the bus.
2. If she _____ (study), she _____ (pass) the exam.
3. If we _____ (arrive) earlier, we _____ (see) John.
4. If they _____ (go) to bed early, they _____ (not / wake) up late.
5. If he _____ (become) a musician, he _____ (record) a CD.
6. If she _____ (go) to art school, she _____ (become) a painter.
7. If I _____ (be) born in a different country, I _____ (learn) to speak a different language.
8. If she _____ (go) to university, she _____ (study) French.
9. If we _____ (not / go) to the party, we _____ (not / meet) them.
10. If he _____ (take) the job, he _____ (not / go) travelling.
11. He _____ (be) happier if he _____ (stay) at home.
12. She _____ (pass) the exam if she _____ (study) harder.
13. We _____ (not / get) married if we _____ (not / go) to the same university.
14. They _____ (be) late if they _____ (not / take) a taxi.
15. She _____ (not / meet) him if she _____ (not / come) to London.
16. He _____ (take) a taxi if he _____ (have) enough money.
17. I _____ (call) you if I _____ (not / forget) my phone.
18. We _____ (come) if we _____ (be) invited.
19. She _____ (not / do) it if she _____ (know) you were ill.
20. He _____ (be) on time if he _____ (leave) earlier.

Answers

(Remember you can use **had** or **'d** AND **would** or **'d**)

1. If you **hadn't** been late, we **wouldn't** have missed the bus.
2. If she **had** studied, she **would** have passed the exam.
3. If we **had** arrived earlier, we **would** have seen John.
4. If they **had** gone to bed early, they **wouldn't** have woken up late.
5. If he **had** become a musician, he **would** have recorded a CD.
6. If she **had** gone to art school, she **would** have become a painter.
7. If I **had** been born in a different country, I **would** have learnt to speak a different language.
8. If she **had** gone to university, she **would** have studied French.
9. If we **hadn't** gone to the party, we **wouldn't** have met them.
10. If he **had** taken the job, he **wouldn't** have gone travelling.
11. He **would** have been happier if he **had** stayed at home.
12. She **would** have passed the exam if she **had** studied harder.
13. We **wouldn't** have got married if we **hadn't** gone to the same university.
14. They **would** have been late if they **hadn't** taken a taxi.
15. She **wouldn't** have met him if she **hadn't** come to London.
16. He **would** have taken a taxi if he **had** had enough money.
17. I **would** have called you if I **hadn't** forgotten my phone.
18. We **would** have come if we **had** been invited.
19. She **wouldn't** have done it if she **had** known you were ill.
20. He **would** have been on time if he **had** left earlier.

Conditional Exercise (First / Second / Third Conditionals)

Complete the sentence with a verb in the correct form.

1. (First conditional) If we _____ (not / work) harder, we
_____ (not pass) the exam.
2. (Third conditional) If the students _____ (not be) late for the exam, they
_____ (pass).
3. (Third conditional) If the weather _____ (not be) so cold, we
_____ (go) to the beach.
4. (Second conditional) If she _____ (have) her laptop with her, she
_____ (email) me.
5. (First conditional) If she _____ (not go) to the meeting, I
_____ (not go) either.
6. (Third conditional) If the baby _____ (sleep) better last night, I
_____ (not be) so tired.
7. (First conditional) If the teacher _____ (give) us lots of homework this
weekend, I _____ (not be) happy.
8. (Second conditional) If Lucy _____ (have) enough time, she
_____ (travel) more.
9. (First conditional) If the children _____ (not eat) soon, they
_____ (be) grumpy.
10. (First conditional) If I _____ (not go) to bed soon, I
_____ (be) tired in the morning.
11. (Second conditional) If I _____ (want) a new car, I
_____ (buy) one.
12. (Second conditional) If José _____ (not speak) good French, he
_____ (not move) to Paris.
13. (First conditional) If John _____ (drink) too much coffee, he
_____ (get) ill.
14. (Third conditional) If we _____ (tidy) our flat, we
_____ (not lose) our keys.
15. (Third conditional) If Luke _____ (not send) flowers to his mother, she
_____ (not be) happy.

16. (Second conditional) If the children _____ (be) in bed, I
_____ (be able to) have a bath.
17. (Second conditional) If you _____ (not be) so stubborn, we
_____ (not have) so many arguments!
18. (Third conditional) If Julie _____ (not go) to Sweden, she
_____ (go) to Germany.
19. (First conditional) If she _____ (go) to the library, she
_____ (study) more.
20. (Third conditional) If we _____ (not have) an argument, we
_____ (not be) late.
21. (Second conditional) If you _____ (arrive) early, it
_____ (be) less stressful.
22. (Third conditional) If I _____ (not go) to the party, I
_____ (not meet) Amanda.
23. (Second conditional) If Julie _____ (like) chocolate, I
_____ (give) her some.
24. (Second conditional) If Luke _____ (live) in the UK, I
_____ (see) him more often.
25. (Third conditional) If the children _____ (not eat) all that chocolate, they
_____ (feel) sick.
26. (First conditional) If they _____ (not / arrive) soon, we
_____ (be) late.
27. (Third conditional) If she _____ (study) Mandarin, she
_____ (go) to Beijing.
28. (Second conditional) If we _____ (not be) so tired, we
_____ (go) out.
29. (First conditional) If you _____ (buy) the present, I
_____ (wrap) it up.
30. (First conditional) If Lucy _____ (not quit) her job soon, she
_____ (go) crazy.

Answers

1. (First conditional) If we don't work harder, we won't pass the exam.
2. (Third conditional) If the students hadn't been late for the exam, they would have passed.
3. (Third conditional) If the weather hadn't been so cold, we would have gone to the beach.
4. (Second conditional) If she had her laptop with her, she would email me.
5. (First conditional) If she doesn't go to the meeting, I won't go either.
6. (Third conditional) If the baby had slept better last night, I wouldn't have been so tired.
7. (First conditional) If the teacher gives us lots of homework this weekend, I won't be happy.
8. (Second conditional) If Lucy had enough time, she would travel more.
9. (First conditional) If the children don't eat soon, they'll be grumpy.
10. (First conditional) If I don't go to bed soon, I'll be tired in the morning.
11. (Second conditional) If I wanted a new car, I would buy one.
12. (Second conditional) If José didn't speak good French, he wouldn't move to Paris.
13. (First conditional) If John drinks too much coffee, he'll get ill.
14. (Third conditional) If we had tidied our flat, we wouldn't have lost our keys.
15. (Third conditional) If Luke hadn't sent flowers to his mother, she wouldn't have been happy.
16. (Second conditional) If the children were in bed, I would be able to have a bath.
17. (Second conditional) If you weren't so stubborn, we wouldn't have so many arguments!
18. (Third conditional) If Julie hadn't gone to Sweden, she would have gone to Germany.
19. (First conditional) If she goes to the library, she'll study more.
20. (Third conditional) If we hadn't had an argument, we wouldn't have been late.
21. (Second conditional) If you arrived early, it would be less stressful.
22. (Third conditional) If I hadn't gone to the party, I wouldn't have met Amanda.
23. (Second conditional) If Julie liked chocolate, I would give her some.
24. (Second conditional) If Luke lived in the UK, I would see him more often.
25. (Third conditional) If the children hadn't eaten all that chocolate, they wouldn't have felt sick.
26. (First conditional) If they don't arrive soon, we'll be late.
27. (Third conditional) If she had studied Mandarin, she would have gone to Beijing.
28. (Second conditional) If we weren't so tired, we would go out.
29. (First conditional) If you buy the present, I'll wrap it up.
30. (First conditional) If Lucy doesn't quit her job soon, she'll go crazy.

Conditionals Exercise

Finish the sentences with a clause in the correct conditional.

1. If it is sunny tomorrow, _____
2. If you sit in the sun too long, _____
3. If I were you, _____
4. If I were the Prime Minister, _____
5. If she had studied harder, _____
6. If I won the lottery, _____
7. If I hadn't gone to bed so late, _____
8. If I hadn't come to London, _____
9. If you mix water and electricity, _____
10. If she hadn't stayed at home, _____
11. If I go out tonight, _____
12. If I were on holiday today, _____
13. If I had listened to my mother, _____
14. If I hadn't eaten so much, _____
15. If it rains later, _____
16. If I were British, _____
17. If I were the opposite sex, _____
18. If I have enough money, _____
19. If you don't wear a coat in the winter, _____
20. If I weren't studying English, _____

Possible answers (check your answer is in the same tense):

1. If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll go to the park.
2. If you sit in the sun too long, you get burned.
3. If I were you, I would go out tonight.
4. If I were the Prime Minister, I would make the museums free.
5. If she had studied harder, she would have passed the exam.
6. If I won the lottery, I would buy a big house.
7. If I hadn't gone to bed so late, I wouldn't have been tired.
8. If I hadn't come to London, I would have gone to New York.
9. If you mix water and electricity, you get a shock.
10. If she hadn't stayed at home, she would have gone shopping.
11. If I go out tonight, I'll go to the cinema.
12. If I were on holiday today, I would go to the beach.
13. If I had listened to my mother, I wouldn't have caught a cold.
14. If I hadn't eaten so much, I wouldn't have felt sick.
15. If it rains later, I won't go out.
16. If I were British, I would speak perfect English.
17. If I were the opposite sex, I would grow a beard.
18. If I have enough money, I'll buy some new shoes.
19. If you don't wear a coat in the winter, you get sick.
20. If I weren't studying English, I would study French.

Twenty-fifth lesson 25: Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

To make the comparative form of adjectives (like 'bigger' or 'more expensive') and the superlative form (like 'biggest' or 'most expensive'), first we need to know how many syllables are in the adjective.

1-Adjectives with one syllable

Usually if an adjective has only one syllable, we add '-er' to make the comparative form. We add '-est' to make the superlative form.

- clean → cleaner / cleanest
- cold → colder / coldest
- small → smaller / smallest
- young → younger / youngest
- tall → taller / tallest

There are some spelling changes. If there is one vowel followed by one consonant at the end of the adjective, we often double the consonant.

- wet → wetter / wettest
- big → bigger / biggest
- hot → hotter / hottest
- thin → thinner / thinnest

If the adjective ends in '-y', this often changes to 'i'.

- dry → drier / driest

If the adjective ends in '-e', we don't add another '-e', just '-r'.

- nice → nicer / nicest
- large → larger / largest

Even when the adjective has only one syllable, it's still not wrong to use 'more' or 'most'. It's possible to say 'more wet' or 'most tall'. This isn't incorrect. There are a few adjectives that we have to use 'more' or 'most' with, even though they only have one syllable. We CAN'T add 'er' or 'est'.

• fun → more fun / most fun

(NOT funner / funnest)

• real → more real / most real

(NOT realer / realest)

• right → more right / most right

(NOT righter / rightest)

• wrong → more wrong / most wrong

(NOT wronger / wrongest)

2-Adjectives with two syllables

For adjectives with two syllables we generally use 'more' or 'most'.

• careful → more careful / most careful

• normal → more normal / most normal

But some two syllable adjectives can take '-er' or '-est'. It's also fine to use 'more' (for the comparative) or 'most' (for the superlative).

• clever → cleverer

• simple → simpler

• narrow → narrower

• quiet → quieter

Adjectives with two syllables that end in 'y' usually can add '-er' or '-est' (y generally changes to i).

It's also fine to use 'more'.

• dirty → dirtier / dirtiest

• pretty → prettier / prettiest

• happy → happier / happiest

• ugly → uglier / ugliest

3-Adjectives with more than two syllables

Adjectives with more than two syllables can only make their comparative by using 'more' and their superlatives by using 'most'.

- beautiful → more beautiful / most beautiful
- intelligent → more intelligent / most intelligent
- interesting → more interesting / most interesting
- expensive → more expensive / most expensive

4-Irregular Adjectives

There are also some irregular adjectives. We just need to learn these forms.

- good → better / best
- bad → worse / worst
- far → further / furthest
- little → less / least
- much → more / most

Comparative Adjectives Exercise 1

Make the comparative form. If it's possible, use '-er'. If not, use 'more'.

1. Dogs are _____ (intelligent) than rabbits.
2. Lucy is _____ (old) than Ellie.
3. Russia is far _____ (large) than the UK.
4. My Latin class is _____ (boring) than my English class.
5. In the UK, the streets are generally _____ (narrow) than the streets in the USA.
6. London is _____ (busy) than Glasgow.
7. Julie is _____ (quiet) than her sister.
8. Amanda is _____ (ambitious) than her classmates.
9. My garden is a lot _____ (colourful) than this park.
10. His house is a bit _____ (comfortable) than a hotel.

Answers

1. Dogs are more intelligent than rabbits.
2. Lucy is older than Ellie.
3. Russia is far larger than the UK.
4. My Latin class is more boring than my English class.
5. In the UK, the streets are generally narrower than the streets in the USA.
6. London is busier than Glasgow.
7. Julie is quieter than her sister.
8. Amanda is more ambitious than her classmates.
9. My garden is a lot more colourful than this park.
10. His house is a bit more comfortable than a hotel.

Superlatives with 'The' Exercise 1

Fill the gap with the if it's necessary. If you can choose, use 'no article' (Ø).

1. Everest is _____ highest mountain in the world.
2. Who is _____ oldest person in your family?
3. This dress was _____ cheapest.
4. Which language do you think is _____ easiest to learn?
5. This book is _____ most serious one on the topic?
6. I think that one over there is _____ strongest horse.
7. This film is _____ shortest.
8. She's _____ fastest runner in her school.
9. That suitcase is _____ lightest.
10. Out of all the cities in Europe, London is _____ biggest.

Answers

1. Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
2. Who is the oldest person in your family?
3. This dress was Ø cheapest.
4. Which language do you think is Ø easiest to learn?
5. This book is the most serious one on the topic.
6. I think that one over there is the strongest horse.
7. This film is Ø shortest.
8. She's the fastest runner in her school.
9. That suitcase is Ø lightest.
10. Out of all the cities in Europe, London is Ø biggest.

SUPERLATIVES

- Listen to your teacher and complete these sixteen sentences with the superlative forms of the adjectives you hear.

“hot”



1. Summer is the hottest season of the year.
2. Elephants _____ land animals.
3. Which country _____?
4. Who _____ person in the world?
5. Steve _____ person I know.
6. Asia _____ continent in the world.
7. Our history exams _____.
8. Jupiter _____ planet in our solar system.
9. Which country _____?
10. The Burj Khalifa _____ building in the world.
11. I think science _____ subject.
12. Alison _____ person in our family.
13. I _____ student in my class!
14. The cheetah _____ land animal in the world.
15. Jake's Bistro _____ restaurant in town.
16. Don't watch that! It _____ movie in the world!

Twenty-sixth lesson: Modal Verbs

Here's a list of the modal verbs in English:

☐ can
☐ could
☐ may
☐ might

☐ will
☐ would
☐ must
☐ shall

☐ should
☐ ought to

Modals are different from normal verbs:

1. They don't use an 's' for the third person singular.
2. They make questions by inversion ('she can go' becomes 'can she go?').
3. They are followed directly by the infinitive of another verb (without 'to').

1-Probability

First, they can be used when we want to say how sure we are that something happened / is happening / will happen. We often call these 'modals of deduction' or 'speculation' or 'certainty' or 'probability'.

For example:

- ☐ It's snowing, so it must be very cold outside.
- ☐ I don't know where John is. He could have missed the train.
- ☐ This bill can't be right. £200 for two cups of coffee!

1-Talking about the present:

Must / might / could / may / can't + infinitive

For example:

I am waiting for Julie with another friend, David.
I ask: 'Where is Julie?'

David guesses :

- She **must** be on the bus. (I'm fairly sure this is a good guess)
- She **might** come soon. (maybe)
- She **could** be lost. (maybe)
- She **may** be in the wrong room. (maybe)
- She **can't** be at home. (I'm fairly sure this isn't true)

Notice that the opposite of '**must**' is '**can't**' in this case.

1-Will / won't

We use **will** and **won't** when we are very sure:

- She'll be at work now.

2-Should / shouldn't

Should and **shouldn't** are used to make an assumption about what is probably true, if everything is as we expect:

- They should be there by now.
- It shouldn't take long to drive here.

This use of **should** isn't usually used for negative events. Instead, it's a better idea to use **will**:

- The underground will be very busy now (not: 'should be').

3-Can

Can is used for something that is generally possible, something we know sometimes happens:

- Prices **can** be high in London.

Can is not used to talk about specific possibilities:

- He **could** be on the bus (not: 'can be').

2-Using modal verbs to talk about the past:

Must / might / could / may / can't + have + past participle

- **Must have** + past participle
- **might / might not have** + past participle
- **Could / couldn't have** + past participle
- **may / may not have** + past participle
- **Can't have** + past participle

For example:

You: Where was Julie last night?

David:

- She **must have forgotten** about our date.
- She **might have worked** late.
- She **could have taken** the wrong bus.
- She **may have felt** ill.
- She **can't have stayed** at home.

1-Will / would / won't + have + past participle

Will and **won't / will not + have + past participle** are used for past certainty (compare with present use of 'will' above):

- The parcel will have arrived before now.

Should + have + past participle

Should + have + past participle can be used to make an assumption about something that has probably happened, if everything is as we expect (compare with present use of 'should' above):

- The train should have left by now

2-Could

We can use **could + infinitive** to talk about a general possibility in the past (compare with the use of 'can' above):

- Prices could be high in the sixteenth century.

This is not used to talk about specific possibilities in the past
(Instead, we use **could + have + past participle**):

- He could have been working late

(not: 'could be'. As this is a specific possibility, 'could be' is present tense)

3- Would

Would have + past participle

1: Part of the third conditional.

If I had had enough money, I would have bought a car (but I didn't have enough money, so I didn't buy a car).

2: Because 'would' (and will) can also be used to show if you want to do something or not (volition),

we can also use would have + past participle to talk about something you wanted to do but didn't. This is very similar to the third conditional, but we don't need an 'if clause'.

I would have gone to the party, but I was really busy.
(= I wanted to go to the party, but I didn't because I was busy. If I hadn't been so busy, I would have gone to the party.)

I would have called you, but I didn't know your number.
(= I wanted to call you but I didn't know your number, so I didn't call you.)

A: Nobody volunteered to help us with the fair

B: I would have helped you. I didn't know you needed help.

(= If I had known that you needed help, I would have helped you.)

Modals of Probability 1

Put in 'must + infinitive' or 'must + have + past participle'.

1. Keiko always does really well on exams. She _____ (study) a lot.
2. That woman drives a very expensive car. She _____ (have) a lot of money.
3. You _____ (practise) a lot before you gave your speech. It was great.
4. When Lizzie got home yesterday, there were flowers on the table. Her husband _____ (buy) them.
5. Where is my purse? I saw it earlier, so it _____ (be) in this room.
6. Sarah couldn't find her glasses. She thought she _____ (leave) them at her office.
7. It _____ (be) cold outside. That man in the street is wearing a coat.
8. All my plants _____ (be) dead! I forgot to water them before I left for my holiday.
9. Susie is so late! She _____ (miss) the train.
10. There's rubbish all over my garden! A fox _____ (be) in the bin.
11. Anna has a huge library in her house. She _____ (love) books.
12. Oh no, I don't have my keys! I _____ (leave) them in the taxi.
13. When Lucy got home, she found the ice cream had melted. It _____ (be) too hot in the car.
14. If you haven't eaten all day, you _____ (be) hungry.
15. Jimmy and Louisa _____ (be) very tired. They have a new baby.
16. It _____ (rain) a lot in the night. There are puddles everywhere.
17. David _____ (be) happy. His girlfriend just agreed to marry him.
18. What an amazing kitchen you've got! You _____ (like) cooking.
19. John _____ (eat) all the biscuits! There are none left.
20. When I got up this morning, the kitchen was spotless. Lily _____ (tidy) it before she went to bed last night.

Answers

1. Keiko always does really well on exams. She must study a lot.
2. That woman drives a very expensive car. She must have a lot of money.
3. You must have practised a lot before you gave your speech. It was great.
4. When Lizzie got home yesterday, there were flowers on the table. Her husband must have bought them.
5. Where is my purse? I saw it earlier, so it must be in this room.
6. Sarah couldn't find her glasses. She thought she must have left them at her office.
7. It must be cold outside. That man in the street is wearing a coat.
8. All my plants must be dead! I forgot to water them before I left for my holiday.
9. Susie is so late! She must have missed the train.
10. There's rubbish all over my garden! A fox must have been in the bin.
11. Anna has a huge library in her house. She must love books.
12. Oh no, I don't have my keys! I must have left them in the taxi.
13. When Lucy got home, she found the ice cream had melted. It must have been too hot in the car.
14. If you haven't eaten all day, you must be hungry.
15. Jimmy and Louisa must be very tired. They have a new baby.
16. It must have rained a lot in the night. There are puddles everywhere.
17. David must be happy. His girlfriend just agreed to marry him.
18. What an amazing kitchen you've got! You must like cooking.
19. John must have eaten all the biscuits! There are none left.
20. When I got up this morning, the kitchen was spotless. Lily must have tidied it before she went to bed last night.

Modals of Probability 2

Put in 'can't' or 'must'.

1. Why is that man looking around like that? He _____ be lost.
2. That woman _____ be a doctor! She looks far too young.
3. John always fails the tests, even though he's clever. He _____ study enough.
4. The food is really good at that restaurant. They _____ have a great chef.
5. Who's that at the door? It _____ be Susie – she'll still be at work now.
6. This _____ be John's house. This house has a red door, and it's number 24, just like he said.
7. Julie _____ have much money, or she would buy a new car. Her old one is falling apart.
8. He _____ be at work now, can he? It's nearly midnight.
9. What a lot of lovely flowers you have! You _____ really like gardening.
10. David _____ drink a lot of coffee. He's finished two packets already this week!
11. This _____ be Jamie's coat. He's very tall, and this is tiny.
12. Her life _____ be easy. She has four children and very little money.
13. Where's Lucy? She _____ be at the library, as she often goes there at this time.
14. This bill _____ be right! £50 for two cups of coffee!
15. Emma's amazingly good at the piano. She _____ practise a lot.
16. The car in front is driving so slowly that I think they _____ be looking for something.
17. You've already eaten enough for three people! You _____ still be hungry!
18. This book _____ belong to the library. It's certainly not mine.
19. It only takes three hours to fly from London to Sydney? That _____ be correct!
20. There _____ be something wrong with the fridge! It's making a very unusual noise.

Answers

1. Why is that man looking around like that? He must be lost.
2. That woman can't be a doctor! She looks far too young.
3. John always fails the tests, even though he's clever. He can't study enough.
4. The food is really good at that restaurant. They must have a great chef.
5. Who's that at the door? It can't be Susie – she'll still be at work now.
6. This must be John's house. This house has a red door, and it's number 24, just like he said.
7. Julie can't have much money, or she would buy a new car. Her old one is falling apart.
8. He can't be at work now, can he? It's nearly midnight.
9. What a lot of lovely flowers you have! You must really like gardening.
10. David must drink a lot of coffee. He's finished two packets already this week!
11. This can't be Jamie's coat. He's very tall, and this is tiny.
12. Her life can't be easy. She has four children and very little money.
13. Where's Lucy? She must be at the library, as she often goes there at this time.
14. This bill can't be right! £50 for two cups of coffee!
15. Emma's amazingly good at the piano. She must practise a lot.
16. The car in front is driving so slowly that I think they must be looking for something.
17. You've already eaten enough for three people! You can't still be hungry!
18. This book must belong to the library. It's certainly not mine.
19. It only takes three hours to fly from London to Sydney? That can't be correct!
20. There must be something wrong with the fridge! It's making a very unusual noise.

2-ABILITY

When we talk about ability, we mean two things.

- 1- First, we mean general ability. This is something that once you have learned you can do any time you want, like being able to read or swim or speak a language, for example.
- 2- The other kind of ability is specific ability. This means something that you can or can't do in one particular situation. For example, being able to lift something heavy, or find somewhere you are looking for.

1-Present

can / can't (for both general and specific ability)

- ☐ I can play the piano.
- ☐ She can speak English.
- ☐ He can't drive – he's too tired.
- ☐ We can't come now.

2-Past

could / couldn't (for general ability)

- ☐ I could read when I was four.
- ☐ She could speak French when she was a child, but now she has forgotten it.
- ☐ He couldn't dance at all until he took lessons.
- ☐ My grandfather couldn't swim.

was able to / couldn't (for specific ability)

- ☐ When the computer crashed yesterday, I was able to fix it.
(not 'I could fix it')
- ☐ She was able to pass the exam, even though she hadn't studied much.
(not 'she could pass')
- ☐ He called us because he couldn't find the house.
- ☐ I couldn't open the window.

could + have + past participle (an ability someone had in the past, but didn't use)

- ☐ I could have played the piano well, but I didn't practise enough.
- ☐ We could have come earlier.
- ☐ She could have studied law, but she preferred to become a secretary.

3-Future

will / won't be able to (general ability)

- ☐ At the end of the course, you will be able to make your own website.
- ☐ He won't be able to speak Japanese in a week! It will take months.

can / can't (specific ability)

- ☐ I can help you tomorrow.
- ☐ I can't come to the party.

Modals of Ability Exercise 1

Put in 'can' / 'can't' / 'could' / 'couldn't'. If none is possible, use 'be able to' in the correct tense.

1. _____ you swim when you were 10?
2. We _____ get to the meeting on time yesterday because the train was delayed by one hour.
3. He _____ arrive at the party on time, even after missing the train, so he was very pleased.
4. He's amazing. He _____ speak 5 languages including Chinese.
5. I _____ drive a car until I was 34, then I moved to the countryside so I had to learn.
6. I looked everywhere for my glasses but I _____ find them anywhere.
7. I searched for your house for ages. Luckily, I _____ find it in the end.
8. She's 7 years old but she _____ read yet – her parents are getting her extra lessons.
9. I read the book three times but I _____ understand it.
10. James _____ speak Japanese when he lived in Japan, but he's forgotten most of it now.
11. I _____ understand the chapter we had to read for homework. It was so difficult.
12. I _____ lift this box – it's too heavy! Would you help me?
13. Lucy _____ make it to our meeting after all. She's stuck in traffic at the moment.
14. John _____ play tennis really well. He's champion of his club.
15. Unfortunately, I really _____ sing at all! No-one in my family is musical either.
16. When the car broke down, I was really pleased because I _____ solve the problem.
17. Julian _____ play excellent golf when he was only ten.
18. My grandmother _____ use a computer until last month. Since then, she's been taking lessons at the library.
19. I _____ open this window. I think it's stuck!
20. Gill _____ play the piano. She's never studied it.

Answers

1. Could you swim when you were 10?
2. We couldn't get to the meeting on time yesterday because the train was delayed by one hour.
3. He was able to arrive at the party on time, even after missing the train, so he was very pleased.
4. He's amazing. He can speak 5 languages including Chinese.
5. I couldn't drive a car until I was 34, then I moved to the countryside so I had to learn.
6. I looked everywhere for my glasses but I couldn't find them anywhere.
7. I searched for your house for ages. Luckily, I was able to find it in the end.
8. She's 7 years old but she can't read yet – her parents are getting her extra lessons.
9. I read the book three times but I couldn't understand it.
10. James could speak Japanese when he lived in Japan, but he's forgotten most of it now.
11. I couldn't understand the chapter we had to read for homework. It was so difficult.
12. I can't lift this box – it's too heavy! Would you help me?
13. Lucy can't make it to our meeting after all. She's stuck in traffic at the moment.
14. John can play tennis really well. He's champion of his club.
15. Unfortunately, I really can't sing at all! No-one in my family is musical either.
16. When the car broke down, I was really pleased because I was able to solve the problem.
17. Julian could play excellent golf when he was only ten.
18. My grandmother couldn't use a computer until last month. Since then, she's been taking lessons at the library.
19. I can't open this window. I think it's stuck!
20. Gill can't play the piano. She's never studied it.

3-OBLIGATION

We can use have to + infinitive, must + infinitive and should + infinitive to express obligation (something you have to do).

1-Present

Have to / don't have to (sometimes 'have got to')

Positive: strong obligation (possibly from outside)

- Children have to go to school.

Negative : no obligation

- I don't have to work on Sundays.
- You don't have to eat anything you don't like.

Must / mustn't

Positive: strong obligation (possibly based on the speaker's opinion)

- I must study today.

Negative : negative obligation

- You mustn't smoke here.

Should / shouldn't

Positive: mild obligation or advice

- You should save some money.

Negative: mild negative obligation or advice

- You shouldn't smoke so much.

Be careful about the difference between **mustn't** and **don't have to**!
Mustn't means it's not allowed, or it's a bad idea:

- You mustn't eat so much chocolate, you'll be sick

Don't have to means you don't need to do something, but it's fine if you want to do it:

- I don't have to get up early at the weekend (of course, if I want to get up early, that's fine, but I can stay in bed if I want).

2-Past

Had to / didn't have to

Positive: Obligation in the past

- I had to wear a school uniform when I was a child.

Negative: No obligation in the past

- We didn't have to go to school on Saturdays.

Must* changes to 'had to' / didn't have to

Positive : Obligation in the past

- I had to wear a school uniform when I was a child.

Negative: No obligation in the past

- We didn't have to go to school on Saturdays.

Should have + pp / shouldn't have + pp

Positive: A past action which didn't happen so the advice / regret is too late

- You should have gone to bed earlier, now you have missed the train.

Negative: A past action which happened - the advice / regret is too late

- You shouldn't have taken that job, it was a bad idea.

*Remember '**must have done**' is a modal verb of deduction or speculation, not obligation in the past.

- Julie must have left. Her coat's not here.

Modals of Obligation 1

Put in 'mustn't' or 'don't / doesn't have to':

1. We have a lot of work tomorrow. You _____ be late.
2. You _____ tell anyone what I just told you. It's a secret.
3. The museum is free. You _____ pay to get in.
4. Children _____ tell lies. It's very naughty.
5. John's a millionaire. He _____ go to work.
6. I _____ do my washing, because my mother does it for me.
7. We _____ rush. We've got plenty of time.
8. You _____ smoke inside the school.
9. You can borrow my new dress but you _____ get it dirty.
10. We _____ miss the train, it's the last one tonight.
11. She _____ do this work today, because she can do it tomorrow.
12. I _____ clean the floor today because I cleaned it yesterday.
13. We _____ forget to lock all the doors before we leave.
14. We _____ stay in a hotel in London, we can stay with my brother.
15. I _____ spend too much money today. I've only got a little left.
16. They _____ get up early today, because it's Sunday.
17. I _____ eat too much cake, or I'll get fat!
18. We _____ be late for the exam.
19. You _____ tidy up now. I'll do it later.
20. He _____ cook tonight because he's going to a restaurant.

Answers:

1. We have a lot of work tomorrow. You **mustn't** be late.
2. You **mustn't** tell anyone what I just told you. It's a secret.
3. The museum is free. You **don't have to** pay to get in.
4. Children **mustn't** tell lies. It's very naughty.
5. John's a millionaire. He **doesn't have to** go to work.
6. I **don't have to** do my washing, because my mother does it for me.
7. We **don't have to** rush. We've got plenty of time.
8. You **mustn't** smoke inside the school.
9. You can borrow my new dress but you **mustn't** get it dirty.
10. We **mustn't** miss the train, it's the last one tonight.
11. She **doesn't have to** do this work today, because she can do it tomorrow.
12. I **don't have to** clean the floor today because I cleaned it yesterday.
13. We **mustn't** forget to lock all the doors before we leave.
14. We **don't have to** stay in a hotel in London, we can stay with my brother.
15. I **mustn't** spend too much money today. I've only got a little left.
16. They **don't have to** get up early today, because it's Sunday.
17. I **mustn't** eat too much cake, or I'll get fat!
18. We **mustn't** be late for the exam.
19. You **don't have to** tidy up now. I'll do it later.
20. He **doesn't have to** cook tonight because he's going to a restaurant.

Twenty-Seventh lesson 27: Phrasal Verbs

1. go on (happen)

- What's going on?
- There's a class going on at the moment.
- What went on last night?

2. pick up (get something or someone from a place)

- I picked up my brother from the airport.
- Please pick up some bread.
- Would you come and pick me up from work tonight?

3. come back (return to a place – the speaker is in that place)

- She came back around 10 pm last night.
- When will you come back from France?
- Please come back! It's boring here without you.

4. come up with (produce an idea)

- Julie came up with a great idea.
- He came up with an answer to the question very quickly.
- Can you come up with a better solution?

5. go back (return to a place – the speaker isn't in that place)

- He finished his work and went back to his flat.
- When is she planning to go back to Japan?
- I'll go back to the library later.

6. find out (get information)

- Can you find out what time the restaurant opens?
- I found out that we need to submit our essays next Tuesday.
- I don't know what the weather forecast is for tomorrow, but I'll find out.

7. come out (appear from a place)

- She came out of the kitchen.
- He went to the café and came out with a coffee.
- Please come out of the bedroom.

8. go out (go to an event / restaurant / pub / party)

- Let's go out for dinner.
- You're going out a lot these days.
- We should go out more.

9. point out (show, mention)

- She pointed out the beautiful paintings on the walls.
- Please point out to the students that they must attend all the lectures.
- 'We'll miss the bus if we don't hurry', he pointed out.

10. grow up (become an adult)

- I grew up in Scotland.
- My children are growing up too fast!
- When will he grow up?

11. set up (create / arrange)

- I need to set up a new bank account.
- She's decided to set up her own company.
- I set up some language classes at the school

12. turn out (in the end we discover)

- The maid turned out to have stolen the money.
- He turned out to be a friend of Alex's.
- The party turned out to be a big success.

13. get out (leave a room / building / car)

- I need to get out of the house!
- She got out of the car and went into the shop.
- Get out! There's a fire in the kitchen!

14. come in(to) (enter – the speaker is in that place)

- Please come in! It's great to see you.
- She came into the living room and sat down.
- Don't come in! I'm not ready yet!

15. take on (be responsible for)

- He's going to take on the new project.
- She isn't taking on any new students at the moment.
- Could you take on some extra work?

16. give up (stop having or doing)

- She has finally given up smoking.
- I had to give up coffee when I was ill.
- He gave up chocolate for a month.

17. make up (be the parts that form something – often used in the passive with 'of')

- Women make up 46% of the employees here.
- This class is made up entirely of boys.
- People who can speak English make up a quarter of the world's population.

18. end up (finally do or be something, especially when you don't expect it)

- We ended up going back home because it was raining so hard.
- They ended up passing the last exam, even though they failed all the other exams.
- Be careful! You'll end up without a job if you are rude to your boss.

19. get back (arrive somewhere again, especially your home, + to + place)

- She got back to Paris last night.
- What time did you get back yesterday?
- We got back very late because the train was delayed.

20. look up (raise your eyes)

- She looked up from her computer and asked a question.
- I called his name, but he didn't look up.
- John looked up from his book when Julie came in.

21. figure out (think about until you understand, plan – more common in USA)

- Let's figure out how we can get to London very early in the morning.
- She couldn't figure out why he had left.
- He finally figured out that the cat must have broken the plate.

22. sit down (change from standing to sitting)

- Do please sit down.
- She sat down and took out her book.
- The children sat down in rows and crossed their legs.

23. get up (change from lying or sitting to standing – more casual than 'stand up')

- She got up when we arrived (= she was sitting and she stood up).
- I don't want to get up. It's so comfortable sitting here.
- What are you doing on the floor? Get up!

24. take out (remove from a container, + 'of' before a noun)

- She took the letter out of the envelope.
- I'll take the sweets out of the box and put them under the Christmas tree now.
- He took his clothes out of the suitcase and put them away in the wardrobe.

25. come on (we say this to encourage someone to go faster or try harder)

- Come on! You're going to be left behind.
- Come on, don't worry. It's all going to be fine.
- She kept telling me to come on, but I was already going as fast as I could.

26. go down (move to a lower place, + to + place)

- She started to go down the stairs.
- We went down to the café and bought some coffee.
- Let's go down to the cellar and see if we can find those books.

27. Show up (arrive at or come to an event / meeting, especially if there's something surprising)

- We all went to the party, but Lucy didn't show up.
- He showed up at the meeting two hours late. Julie was very angry.
- I wonder if John's going to show up today. He didn't come last time.

28. take off (remove clothes or jewellery)

- I took off my coat because it was very hot.
- She always takes off all her rings before she goes to bed.
- Is it okay to take off my shoes?

29. work out (think about until you understand, plan – more common in the UK)

- We need to work out how to get to the wedding.
- She couldn't work out how the bird had got into the living room.
- I don't know why the car won't start but I'll work it out.

30. stand up (change from lying or sitting to standing – less casual than 'get up')

- Please stand up when the Queen comes in.
- She finished her coffee, stood up and left the restaurant.
- He stood up to let an old man have his seat.

Phrasal Verbs Exercise 1

Choose the correct phrasal verb: go on / pick up / come back / come up with / go back / find out / come out / go out / point out / grow up / set up / turn out / get out / come in (to) / take on.

1. Can you _____ (think of an idea) a better idea?
2. She _____ (showed, mentioned) that the shops would already be closed.
3. I wish I hadn't _____ (become responsible for) so much work!
4. I _____ (went to an event) for dinner with my husband last night.
5. He _____ (entered a place where the speaker is) the kitchen and made some tea.
6. Where did you _____ (become an adult)?
7. I'd love to _____ (arrange / create) my own business.
8. I really want to _____ (leave a building) of this office and go for a walk.
9. As I arrived, he _____ (appeared from a place) of the door.
10. She _____ (got something from a place) some dinner on the way home.
11. Could you _____ (get information) what time we need to arrive?
12. I thought the conference was going to be boring but it _____ (in the end we discovered) to be quite useful.
13. What time did you _____ (return to a place where the speaker is) yesterday?
14. She _____ (appeared from a place) of the café and put on her gloves.
15. A performance _____ (is happening) at the moment.
16. He _____ (left a car) of the car.

17. He _____ (went to an event) a lot at the weekend, so he's tired today.
18. Can we _____ (arrange / create) a meeting next week?
19. Would anybody like to _____ (become responsible for) this new client?
20. He _____ (returned to a place where the speaker is) before I left.
21. It's lovely watching my children _____ (become adults).
22. She _____ (returned to a place where the speaker is not) to school.
23. He _____ (showed, mentioned) the stars to the children.
24. He _____ (returned to a place where the speaker is not) to Poland last year.
25. He _____ (thought of an idea) a solution.
26. Please _____ (enter a place where the speaker is)!
27. At the end of the film, it _____ (in the end we discovered) that John was a good guy.
28. Could you _____ (get someone from a place) Lucy later?
29. We need to _____ (get information) how much it costs.
30. What _____ ('s happening)?

Answers

1. Can you come up with a better idea?
2. She pointed out that the shops would already be closed.
3. I wish I hadn't taken on so much work!
4. I went out for dinner with my husband last night.
5. He came into the kitchen and made some tea.
6. Where did you grow up?
7. I'd love to set up my own business.
8. I really want to get out of this office and go for a walk.
9. As I arrived, he came out of the door.
10. She picked up some dinner on the way home.
11. Could you find out what time we need to arrive?
12. I thought the conference was going to be boring but it turned out to be quite useful.
13. What time did you come back yesterday?
14. She came out of the café and put on her gloves.
15. A performance is going on at the moment.
16. He got out of the car.
17. He went out a lot at the weekend, so he's tired today.
18. Can we set up a meeting next week?
19. Would anybody like to take on this new client?
20. He came back before I left.
21. It's lovely watching my children grow up.
22. She went back to school.
23. He pointed out the stars to the children.
24. He went back to Poland last year.
25. He came up with a solution.
26. Please come in!
27. At the end of the film, it turned out that John was a good guy.
28. Could you pick up Lucy later?
29. We need to find out how much it costs.
30. What's going on?

Phrasal Verbs Exercise 2

Choose the correct phrasal verb: give up / make up / end up / get back / look up / figure out / sit down / get up / take out / come on / go down / show up / take off / work out / stand up.

1. She _____ (arrived somewhere again) to London last week.
2. David _____ (removed clothes or jewellery) his gloves and put them in his pocket.
3. John _____ (changed from lying or sitting to standing – not casual) and left the room without a word.
4. What time did John _____ (arrive somewhere again) yesterday?
5. Please _____ (I am encouraging the person to go faster or try harder)! We're already miles behind the others.
6. She _____ (raised her eyes) from her laptop and smiled.
7. She _____ (stopped having or doing) coffee last year but was so grumpy that she started drinking it again.
8. You should _____ (remove clothes or jewellery) your hat inside.
9. People from other countries _____ (are the parts that form something) about a third of the population of London.
10. He didn't even _____ (raise his eyes) when she came in. So rude!
11. We _____ (are moving to a lower place) to the beach now. Would you like to come?
12. Lucy! _____ (change from lying or sitting to standing – more casual) quick! The teacher is coming!
13. The children _____ (changed from lying or sitting to standing – less casual) when the headmaster arrived.
14. She came into the room and _____ (changed from standing to sitting).
15. She _____ the bags _____ (removed from a container) of the car and put them in the hall.
16. _____ (I'm encouraging the person to go faster or try harder)! You're doing really well. Keep going!

17. She finally _____ (thought until she understood, planned – more UK) the answers to the maths homework.
18. They _____ (moved to a lower place) to the kitchen and made some tea.
19. Please _____ (change from standing to sitting).
You're making me nervous!
20. She _____ (changed from lying or sitting to standing – more casual) slowly and picked up her bag.
21. After a long day, we _____ (finally did or were something, especially when you don't expect it) getting a pizza and falling asleep on the sofa.
22. I can't _____ (think about until I understand, plan – more UK) why Andrew is so upset.
23. We'll _____ (stop having or doing) chocolate after the holidays!
24. I can't _____ (think about until I understand, plan – more USA) how to do this exercise.
25. I couldn't believe it! He didn't _____ (arrive at or come to an event / meeting, especially if there's something surprising) until 11pm!
26. They _____ (thought about until they understood, planned – more USA) that it must have been the toddler who put the milk in the oven.
27. She wanted to go travelling but she _____ (finally did or was something, especially when you don't expect it) working in a shop all summer.
28. I _____ the book _____ (removed from a container) of my bag and gave it to him.
29. I think coffee and cakes _____ (are the parts that form something) most of her diet!
30. We had a meeting yesterday but only a few people _____ (arrive at or come to an event / meeting, especially if there's something surprising).

Answers

1. She got back to London last week.
2. David took off his gloves and put them in his pocket.
3. John stood up and left the room without a word.
4. What time did John get back yesterday?
5. Please come on! We're already miles behind the others.
6. She looked up from her laptop and smiled.
7. She gave up coffee last year but was so grumpy that she started drinking it again.
8. You should take off your hat inside.
9. People from other countries make up about a third of the population of London.
10. He didn't even look up when she came in. So rude!
11. We are going down to the beach now. Would you like to come?
12. Lucy! Get up quick! The teacher is coming!
13. The children stood up when the headmaster arrived.
14. She came into the room and sat down.
15. She took the bags out of the car and put them in the hall.
16. Come on! You're doing really well. Keep going!
17. She finally worked out the answers to the maths homework.
18. They went down to the kitchen and made some tea.
19. Please sit down. You're making me nervous!
20. She got up slowly and picked up her bag.
21. After a long day, we ended up getting a pizza and falling asleep on the sofa.
22. I can't work out why Andrew is so upset.
23. We'll give up chocolate after the holidays!
24. I can't figure out how to do this exercise.
25. I couldn't believe it! He didn't show up until 11pm!
26. They figured out that it must have been the toddler who put the milk in the oven.
27. She wanted to go travelling but she ended up working in a shop all summer.
28. I took the book out of my bag and gave it to him.
29. I think coffee and cakes make up most of her diet!
30. We had a meeting yesterday but only a few people showed up.

Phrasal Verbs Exercise 3

Choose the correct phrasal verb: come down (from) / go ahead / go up / look back (on) / wake up / carry out / take over / hold up / pull out (of) / turn around / take up / look down / put up / bring back / bring up.

1. Now that Amanda has quit, we really need someone to _____ (take control of) that part of the business.
2. If you want to get started on the report, please _____ (begin to do something).
3. We were talking about the weather and then she _____ (started to talk about) the election.
4. This project _____ (is using a certain amount of space or time) far too much time.
5. The repairs were _____ (done and finished a task or activity) by a carpenter.
6. John is going to _____ (take control of) the project.
7. Why don't you _____ (begin to do something) and have dinner? I'll join you later.
8. She _____ (moved from a high place to a lower place) the attic with dust in her hair.
9. I _____ (changed from sleeping to being awake) in the middle of the night and I couldn't go back to sleep.
10. The scientists _____ (did and finished a task or activity) an experiment.
11. He felt something touch his leg so he _____ (moved his eyes down) and saw a cat.
12. _____ (change from sleeping to being awake)! We need to go out!
13. She often _____ (thought about something in the past) her time at university.
14. We used to call each other every week. Let's _____ that _____ (make something return). It was really good.

15. She _____ her purse _____ (took something out of a container) her pocket.
16. Her phone call _____ (used a certain amount of space or time) the whole evening.
17. Let's _____ (fix something where it will be seen) a notice to tell people the class has been cancelled.
18. Please _____ (move from a high place to a lower place) that tree! It's not safe!
19. Her house will probably _____ (increase) in value.
20. The stock market _____ (has increased) recently.
21. She _____ (moved her eyes down) at her feet and mumbled an answer.
22. She _____ (fixed something where it would be seen) some photos of her family next to her bed.
23. Please _____ (hold something high up so people can see it) the sign so I can read it.
24. He likes to _____ (think about something in the past) his trip round Australia.
25. She _____ (held something high up so people could see it) the camera.
26. He _____ the conversation _____ (make something return) to the problem.
27. We walked to the lake, then _____ (moved to face the other direction) and came back.
28. Could you _____ (start to talk about) this problem at the meeting, please?
29. He _____ (moved to face the other direction) and left the room.
30. He reached into the drawer and _____ (took something out of a container) a notebook and pen.

Answers

1. Now that Amanda has quit, we really need someone to take over that part of the business.
2. If you want to get started on the report, please go ahead.
3. We were talking about the weather and then she brought up the election.
4. This project is taking up far too much time.
5. The repairs were carried out by a carpenter.
6. John is going to take over the project.
7. Why don't you go ahead and have dinner? I'll join you later.
8. She came down from the attic with dust in her hair.
9. I woke up in the middle of the night and I couldn't go back to sleep.
10. The scientists carried out an experiment.
11. He felt something touch his leg so he looked down and saw a cat.
12. Wake up! We need to go out!
13. She often looked back on her time at university.
14. We used to call each other every week. Let's bring that back. It was really good.
15. She pulled her purse out of her pocket.
16. Her phone call took up the whole evening.
17. Let's put up a notice to tell people the class has been cancelled.
18. Please come down from that tree! It's not safe!
19. Her house will probably go up in value.
20. The stock market has gone up recently.
21. She looked down at her feet and mumbled an answer.
22. She put up some photos of her family next to her bed.
23. Please hold up the sign so I can read it.
24. He likes to look back on his trip round Australia.
25. She held up the camera.
26. He brought the conversation back to the problem.
27. We walked to the lake, then turned around and came back.
28. Could you bring up this problem at the meeting, please?
29. He turned around and left the room.
30. He reached into the drawer and pulled out a notebook and pen.

Twenty-eighth lesson 28: Links between sentences

المعارضة و التناقض - Contrasting

but
However,
Although
despite
In spite of
Nevertheless,
On the contrary,
on the one hand
on the other hand,
whereas
while
whilst
but while
In contrast,
Neither...nor

Mais
Cependant
Bien que/ malgré que
Malgré
en dépit de
Néanmoins
Au contraire
d'une part/ d'un côté
d'autre part/de l'autre côté
alors/ tandis que
tant que/ cependant que
pendant que
mais tandis que
En revanche
Ni ... ni/ ni l'un ni l'autre

لكن
و مع ذلك
رغم ان
على الرغم من
على الرغم من/بغض النظر عن
و مع ذلك
على العكس من ذلك
من ناحية
و من ناحية اخرى
في حين
بينما
في حين
لكن حين
في المقابل
إما كذا و إما ذاك/ لا هذا و لا ذاك

الإضافة - Adding

and
as well as
besides,
Moreover,
Furthermore,
What is more,
In addition,
not only ... but also
another point is that

Et
ainsi que
plus/en plus de
En outre/ par ailleurs
En outre/encore
Ce qui est plus
En ajout
non seulement.. mais aussi
un autre point est que

و
فضلا عن
بالإضافة إلى/علاوة على
علاوة على ذلك
صف الى ذلك
و الأكثر من ذلك
بالإضافة إلى
ليس فقط ... بل ايضا
و ثمة نقطة اخرى هي ان

التعبير عن الاسباب - Expressing cause / reason

because
as
since
This is why
because of
Due to
Owing to
Thanks to
For this reason,

parce que/car/ à fin que
comme
depuis
C'est pourquoi
En raison de/ à cause de
En raison de/ par suite de
grâce à
grâce à
Pour cette raison

لأن
كما/مثلما
منذ
لهذا السبب
بسبب
من جراء
إزاء/بفضل
بفضل
لأجل هذا السبب

تقديم الامثلة - Giving examples

for example,	par exemple,	على سبيل المثال
for instance,	par exemple,	على سبيل المثال
For one thing,	D'une part/Pour une chose	و كإشارة
this includes	ce qui inclut	و هذا يشمل
such as	tels que par exemple	مثلا
e.g.. / i.e.. (that is)	à savoir (qui est)	ك / أي

التعبير عن الغرض و الهدف - Expressing purpose

To	à	ل / إلى
for	pour	لأجل
so as to	de manière à/ afin de	لكي
in order that	afin que/ pour que	من أجل أن
so that	de sorte que/ si bien que	بحيث

التركيز و التحديد - Emphasis

especially	en particulier/spécialement	خصوصا
particularly	particulièrement	خاصة
Naturally,	Naturellement	بالطبع/ طبعاً
exactly because	précisément parce que	بالضبط لأن
above all	avant tout/ surtout	قبل كل شيء/ في بادئ الامر
Whatever	n'importe quel	مهما/ أيا كان

تقديم الخلاصة و الختام - Summing up / concluding

All in all	en tout	الكل في الكل
overall	globalement/ en general	شمولاً
generally	généralement	عموماً/بشكل عام
In conclusion,	En conclusion,	وفي الختام
on the whole	sur l'ensemble	على العموم/عامة
To sum up,	Pour résumer	وخلاصة القول

التعبير عن النتائج و الحواصل - Expressing effect / result

so	Si/ ainsi/ et alors	إذن/و بالتالي
so...that	alors que	ذلك ان
such a...that	tels que les a	و لذلك/ ومن ثم
Therefore	donc/par suite	وبالتالي
Thus	Ainsi	كما ايضاً
Consequently,	En/par conséquence	بناءً على ذلك
As a result/effect,	En conséquence	و نتيجة لذلك/ و كنتيجة
too...for/to	trop ... pour que	كذلك ايضاً

Linking Words of Contrast

Choose 'however', 'although' or 'despite'.

1. _____ the rain, we still went to the park.
2. _____ it was raining, we still went to the park.
3. It was raining. _____, we still went to the park.
4. John bought the watch, _____ the fact that it was expensive.
5. John bought the watch. _____, it was expensive.
6. _____ it was expensive, John bought the watch.
7. I finished the homework. It, _____, wasn't easy.
8. I finished the homework, _____ it wasn't easy.
9. _____ the fact that it wasn't easy, I finished the homework.
10. She went for a long walk, _____ being cold.
11. _____ she was cold, she went for a long walk.
12. She was cold. She went for a long walk, _____.
13. The restaurant has a good reputation. _____, the food was terrible.
14. _____ the restaurant's good reputation, the food was terrible.
15. _____ the restaurant has a good reputation, the food was terrible.

Answers

1. Despite the rain, we still went to the park.
2. Although it was raining, we still went to the park.
3. It was raining. However, we still went to the park.
4. John bought the watch, despite the fact that it was expensive.
5. John bought the watch. However, it was expensive.
6. Although it was expensive, John bought the watch.
7. I finished the homework. It, however, wasn't easy.
8. I finished the homework, although it wasn't easy!
9. Despite the fact that it wasn't easy, I finished the homework.
10. She went for a long walk, despite being cold.
11. Although she was cold, she went for a long walk.
12. She was cold. She went for a long walk, however.
13. The restaurant has a good reputation. However, the food was terrible.
14. Despite the restaurant's good reputation, the food was terrible.
15. Although the restaurant has a good reputation, the food was terrible.

Linking Words of Reason

Choose the correct word or phrase in brackets.

1. (because / because of)

We stayed inside _____ the storm.

2. (since / because of)

I wanted to stay longer _____ I was really enjoying the party.

3. (as / due to)

Amanda stayed at home _____ her illness.

4. (due to / as)

Her lateness was _____ a terrible traffic jam.

5. (since / owing to)

_____ flights are cheaper in the winter, we decided to travel then.

6. (as / because of)

_____ she hated cats, she wasn't happy when her husband bought three.

7. (owing to / as)

John didn't go to work _____ his illness.

8. (because / due to)

_____ Lucy was very tired, she went to bed early.

9. (because / owing to)

_____ his late night, John missed his train.

10. (for / owing to)

Lucy was very unhappy, _____ she missed James.

11. (as / due to)

_____ the terrible weather, we decided not to walk home.

12. (as / owing to)

I was very happy with my present, _____ it was exactly what I wanted.

13. (due to / since)

Keiko ordered her meal without meat, _____ she is a vegetarian.

14. (because of / as)

I didn't want to leave _____ I was having a great time.

15. (owing to / since)

Luca bought the shoes _____ they were perfect.

16. (because of / because)

We were late for the plane _____ the traffic.

17. (for / as)

_____ it was really cold, I put on my gloves and my hat.

18. (due to / because)

She couldn't come _____ she had to work.

19. (owing to / because)

_____ its high price, we didn't rent the flat.

20. (because of / since)

_____ his great cooking, we love going to dinner at Taka's house.

Answers

1. We stayed inside because of the storm.
2. I wanted to stay longer since I was really enjoying the party.
3. Amanda stayed at home due to her illness.
4. Her lateness was due to a terrible traffic jam.
5. Since flights are cheaper in the winter, we decided to travel then.
6. As she hated cats, she wasn't happy when her husband bought three kittens.
7. John didn't go to work owing to his illness.
8. Because Lucy was very tired, she went to bed early.
9. Owing to his late night, John missed his train.
10. Lucy was very unhappy, for she missed James.
11. Due to the terrible weather, we decided not to walk home.
12. I was very happy with my present, as it was exactly what I wanted.
13. Keiko ordered her meal without meat, since she is a vegetarian.
14. I didn't want to leave as I was having a great time.
15. Luca bought the shoes since they were perfect.
16. We were late for the plane because of the traffic.
17. As it was really cold, I put on my gloves and my hat.
18. She couldn't come because she had to work.
19. Owing to its high price, we didn't rent the flat.
20. Because of his great cooking, we love going to dinner at Taka's house.

Twenty-ninth lesson 29: 'AS' AND 'LIKE'

1-As

1: 'As' can mean 'because'.

- As it was raining, we stayed at home.

2: 'As' can mean 'while' or 'at the same time':

- As I was walking down the street, I saw Julie.

3: We can use 'as' to talk about the way one thing is similar to another thing. In this case too, 'as' is a conjunction and needs to be followed by a subject and a verb or by a prepositional phrase. Sometimes we invert the subject and the verb in a formal style.

- John loves spicy food, as I do (or 'as do I', more formally).

4: We need to use 'as' with expressions like 'as much as' and by 'as adjective as'. This is also talking about similarity. These expressions can be followed by a subject and a verb or a noun or preposition.

- John loves spicy food as much as I do.
- Lucy travels as much as me.
- She's as clever as her sister is.
- London's not as big as Mexico City.

5: 'As' can be used with a noun to show someone's position. This is especially common with jobs. In a similar way, 'as' can also be used to show something's function (what we are using it for). It must be followed by a noun.

- She works as a teacher.
- Don't use the knife as a screwdriver.
- Watch out! You can't use 'like' for someone's real job. You need to use 'as'. ~~I work like a waitress.~~

2-Like

1: 'Like' can be used to give examples. It means the same as 'for example' and is usually followed by nouns or pronouns.

- I love big cats, like lions.
- Western European countries like France and Spain have high unemployment at the moment.

2: We can also use 'like' to talk about how one thing is similar to another thing. Here 'like' is a preposition and is followed by a noun or a pronoun.

- John loves spicy food, like me.
- Tokyo is a busy and exciting city, like London.

When we're talking about how things are similar, we often use 'like' with verbs such as 'look', 'sound' and 'smell'.

- She looks like her mother.
- It looks like rain.
- That sounds like a car.
- The kitchen smells like lemons.

Traditionally, 'like' needed to be followed by a noun. However, in modern English, we often use 'like' as a conjunction and so it is followed by a subject and a verb. Some people think this is not correct, but it's very common.

- John loves spicy food, like I do.

3-'Like' vs 'as' for similarity

1-Often, we can use both 'as' and 'like' to talk about similarity.

- I love coffee, like Julie / I love coffee, like Julie does.
- I love coffee, as Julie does.

We need to follow 'as' with a clause (a subject and a verb). When we use 'as' for similarity, it's not followed by a noun or pronoun.

- ~~I love coffee, as Julie.~~

However, when we use 'as' to mean a role or job (it's followed by a noun in this case), then we can't use 'like'. Instead, 'like' is talking about similarity.

- As your mother, I'm telling you not to go out now. (I am your mother and I am telling you this in my role as your mother.)
- Like your mother, I'm telling you not to go out now. (I'm not your mother, but I am telling you the same thing as she is. I am acting in a similar way to your mother.)

2-Here's another example.

- She works as the manager (= she is the manager).
- She works like the manager (= she isn't the manager, but she works in a similar way to the manager).

As and Like Exercise 1

Choose 'as' or 'like'.

1. She works _____ a teacher (it's her job).
2. I'm very _____ my mother.
3. Julie loves mangoes as much _____ I do.
4. He arrived _____ I was leaving.
5. He works in a bank, _____ his father.
6. I used a tea towel _____ an oven glove and I burned it!
7. Your perfume smells _____ flowers.
8. _____ it was cold, I took a scarf.
9. He works _____ a hairdresser (it's his job).
10. That woman looks _____ my grandmother.
11. Please do it _____ me.
12. She hates chocolate as much _____ John.
13. _____ the other students, Paul failed the exam.
14. London is just as busy _____ Tokyo.
15. She often plays sports, _____ tennis or football.
16. Amanda works _____ a lawyer (it's her job).
17. This room is just as hot _____ the other room.
18. You look _____ your sister.
19. She studied really hard, _____ us.
20. We are as intelligent _____ you.

Answers

1. She works as a teacher (it's her job).
2. I'm very like my mother.
3. Julie loves mangoes as much as I do.
4. He arrived as I was leaving.
5. He works in a bank, like his father.
6. I used a tea towel as an oven glove and I burned it!
7. Your perfume smells like flowers.
8. As it was cold, I took a scarf.
9. He works as a hairdresser (it's his job).
10. That woman looks like my grandmother.
11. Please do it like me.
12. She hates chocolate as much as John.
13. Like the other students, Paul failed the exam.
14. London is just as busy as Tokyo.
15. She often plays sports, like tennis or football.
16. Amanda works as a lawyer (it's her job).
17. This room is just as hot as the other room.
18. You look like your sister.
19. She studied really hard, like us.
20. We are as intelligent as you.

Thirtieth lesson 30: 'LET' AND 'MAKE'

1-Let

Subject + let + object + bare infinitive (infinitive without 'to')

'Let' can mean 'allow' or 'give permission':

- David's mother **let** him use her car.
- Our boss **let** us leave early.

We can also use 'let' to mean 'allow' in the sense of 'make something possible':

- This student card **lets** you book discount flights.
- You can buy a pass which **lets** you visit all the art galleries more cheaply.

Let's + infinitive is often used to make a suggestion:

- **Let's** go to the cinema tonight.
- **Let's** get some coffee.

(Although 'let's' is a contraction of 'let us', we don't use 'let us' in this situation). We don't use 'let' in the passive.

2-Make

Subject + make + object + bare infinitive (infinitive without 'to')

'Make' can mean 'force someone to do something that he or she doesn't want to do':

- His mother **made** him clean his room.
- The teacher **made** us study very hard.

It can also be used to mean 'cause someone to do something' (the thing can be good or bad):

- That film **made** me cry.
- My brother often **makes** me laugh.

If we use 'make' in the passive, we use the infinitive with 'to' instead of the bare infinitive:

- She was **made to** work on Saturday, even though she hated working at weekends.

We can also use: subject + make + object + adjective.

This means 'cause the object to be the adjective' (the adjective can be good or bad):

- Her story **made** me really happy.
- The traffic jam **made** us late.

3-Choosing 'let' or 'make'

Remember, we use 'let' when we mean 'allow'. It's usually something the person wants to do:

- My boss **let** me leave early (I wanted to leave early, and the boss gave me permission).

We use 'make' when we mean 'force' or 'cause'. It's often something the person doesn't want to do:

- My boss **made** me stay late (I didn't want to stay, but I had to).

When 'make' means 'cause' it can be something good or bad:

- My brother **made** me laugh

Laughing is a good thing, BUT laughing isn't something I wanted to do that my brother gave me permission for. Instead it's something that he caused.

We can only use

'make + object + adjective'. We can't use 'let' in this way.

11-Writing: routine daily in past

Every morning, I woke up and went to the bathroom. I washed my face and other things. After that, I ate breakfast, put on my clothes, and prepared my bag. Then, I went to university by bus. I reached the university and met with my friends. We went to the classroom for our English class. After we finished, I came back home, did my homework, ate dinner, and went to sleep.

2-Reading: traditional Moroccan

That's a wonderful topic! Moroccan traditions are rich, diverse, and deeply ingrained in daily life. Let's explore some key aspects:

Clothing

Traditional Moroccan attire is both practical for the climate and beautifully symbolic.

- * Djellaba: This is perhaps the most recognizable garment, a long, loose-fitting hooded robe worn by both men and women. It provides protection from the sun, wind, and even the cold desert nights. You'll see them in various colors and fabrics, from thick wool for winter to lightweight cotton for summer. The hood, called a "qob," can be used for protection or even as a makeshift pocket.

- * Kaftan: Primarily worn by women for special occasions like weddings and celebrations, the kaftan is an elegant, often intricately decorated robe. It can be made from luxurious fabrics like silk and velvet and adorned with elaborate embroidery, beading, and sequins. Unlike the djellaba, it typically doesn't have a hood. Sometimes, a more ornate version called a "takchita," consisting of two or more layers, is worn for very formal events.

- * Babouche: These are traditional Moroccan slippers, typically made of soft leather. They come in various colors and styles, with pointed or rounded toes,

and are comfortable for navigating the medinas. Yellow babouche are often worn by men for special occasions.

- * Fez (Tarbouche): This is a traditional red cylindrical hat with a tassel, mainly worn by men for formal events and sometimes as part of official uniforms.

- * Berber Clothing: The indigenous Berber people have their own distinct styles of traditional clothing, which vary from tribe to tribe. These often feature unique patterns, colors, and jewelry that reflect their heritage.

Music

Moroccan traditional music is a captivating blend of Arab, Berber, and African influences, creating a rich tapestry of sounds and rhythms.

- * Andalusian Classical Music (Musiqa al-Ala): This refined genre has its roots in the music of Moorish Spain and is characterized by complex melodies, poetic lyrics, and the use of instruments like the oud, rebab (a bowed string instrument), and various percussion. It's often performed in formal settings and evokes a sense of history and elegance.

- * Gnawa Music: With its deep spiritual roots in Sufism and West African traditions, Gnawa music is characterized by hypnotic rhythms played on large lutes called "guembri" (or "hajhouj"), metal castanets ("qraqeb"), and powerful, often chanted vocals. It's known for its healing and trance-inducing qualities.

- * Chaabi: Meaning "popular," Chaabi music is the vibrant folk music of Morocco, often played at celebrations, weddings, and in public spaces. It's energetic, danceable, and reflects everyday life with lyrics in Darija (Moroccan Arabic). Instruments like the violin, oud, and various percussion instruments are common.

- * Amazigh (Berber) Music: This diverse category encompasses the music of Morocco's indigenous Berber population. Styles vary greatly by region and tribe, often featuring singing, drumming (like the "bendir," a frame drum), flutes ("taghanimt"), and stringed instruments ("ribab"). The music often tells stories, recounts historical events, or celebrates nature and community life.

- * Aita: A Bedouin musical style originating from the countryside, particularly the Atlantic plains. Aita (meaning "call" or "cry") is known for its powerful vocals, often expressing themes of love, loss, and social commentary, accompanied by instruments like the violin and percussion.

- * Malhun: A classical form of sung poetry, traditionally associated with urban centers like Fez, Meknes, and Salé. It features intricate melodies and sophisticated lyrics, often performed by a singer accompanied by an orchestra of traditional instruments.

Food

Moroccan cuisine is a feast for the senses, known for its aromatic spices, flavorful tagines, and the ritual of sharing meals.

* **Tagine:** Named after the conical clay pot in which it's cooked, a tagine is a slow-cooked stew featuring meat (often lamb or chicken), vegetables, fruits (like prunes and apricots), and a blend of fragrant spices such as cumin, ginger, cinnamon, and saffron. The slow cooking process tenderizes the ingredients and melds the flavors beautifully.

* **Couscous:** This is considered the national dish of Morocco. Fine semolina grains are steamed and typically served with a flavorful stew of meat and vegetables. It's often prepared for Friday gatherings and special occasions, highlighting the importance of communal eating.

* **Harira:** A rich and hearty tomato-based soup with lentils, chickpeas, and sometimes meat. It's traditionally served during Ramadan to break the fast but is enjoyed throughout the year as a warming and nutritious dish.

* **Mint Tea (Atay):** More than just a beverage, mint tea is a symbol of Moroccan hospitality. It's prepared with green tea, fresh mint leaves, and a generous amount of sugar, poured from a height to create a frothy top. Offering and accepting mint tea is a fundamental social gesture.

* **Pastilla (B'stilla):** A truly unique and opulent sweet and savory pie, traditionally made with pigeon (though chicken or other poultry is common now), almonds, eggs, and a blend of spices, all encased in flaky pastry and dusted with powdered sugar and cinnamon.

* **Zaalouk:** A delicious cooked salad made from eggplant, tomatoes, garlic, and spices like cumin and paprika. It's often served as a side dish or a dip with bread.

* **Khobz:** This is the staple Moroccan bread, typically round and crusty, perfect for scooping up tagines and salads.

Crafts

Moroccan craftsmanship is renowned for its artistry, intricate designs, and the use of traditional techniques passed down through generations.

* **Carpets and Rugs:** Handwoven carpets and rugs are a significant part of Moroccan heritage. Berber rugs, in particular, are known for their unique geometric patterns and natural wool. Different regions have their own distinct styles and weaving techniques, often telling stories through their designs.

* **Leather Goods:** Cities like Fez are famous for their leather tanneries and the production of high-quality leather goods, including babouche slippers, bags, and poufs. The traditional tanning methods, often using natural dyes, have been practiced for centuries.

* **Ceramics and Pottery:** Moroccan pottery is characterized by its vibrant colors and intricate geometric or floral patterns. Cities like Safi and Fez are known for their distinct styles and techniques, producing everything from tagine pots to decorative plates and bowls.

* **Metalwork:** Skilled artisans create intricate metalwork in brass, copper, and silver, crafting beautiful lanterns, trays, teapots, and decorative items. The play of light and shadow through pierced metal lanterns is a hallmark of Moroccan design.

* **Woodwork:** Especially in cities like Essaouira, woodworking is a significant craft. Thuya wood, a fragrant wood native to the region, is used to create boxes, furniture, and decorative objects, often adorned with marquetry.

* **Zellige:** These are the iconic mosaic tiles found throughout Moroccan architecture, adorning walls, floors, and fountains with complex geometric patterns and vibrant colors. Creating zellige is a highly skilled art form, with each tile being hand-cut and meticulously placed.

* **Textiles:** Beyond carpets, Moroccan textiles include handwoven blankets, cushions, and clothing fabrics, often featuring rich colors and intricate embroidery. Wedding blankets ("handira") made by Berber women are particularly special, adorned with sequins and symbolic patterns.

These are just some glimpses into the rich tapestry of Moroccan traditions. Each aspect carries its own history, significance, and continues to be a vibrant part of Moroccan identity today. Is there any specific traditional aspect you'd like to delve deeper into?

3-Reading: motivation about you can be good in school

That's a fantastic goal! Let's craft a motivational dialogue between two students, perhaps one who's doing well and offering advice to another who wants to improve. How does that sound?

Student A (Sarah): Hey Alex, you seem a bit down lately. Everything alright?

Student B (Alex): Not really, Sarah. School's just... tough. I feel like I'm always struggling to keep up, and my grades aren't where I want them to be. I really wish I could be better at this.

Sarah: I get it, Alex. It can feel overwhelming sometimes. But trust me, you absolutely can improve. It just takes a bit of a shift in approach and a good dose of belief in yourself.

Alex: Easier said than done, right? Where do I even start?

Sarah: Well, for me, the biggest thing was realizing that being "good at school" isn't just about being naturally smart. It's a lot about how you learn and how you work.

Alex: So, what does that look like practically?

Sarah: For starters, being present in class. I used to zone out sometimes, but now I really focus on what the teacher is saying and take good notes. It makes a huge difference when you're reviewing later.

Alex: Notes... I try, but they often end up being a jumbled mess.

Sarah: Haha, been there! Try different methods. Maybe bullet points, mind maps, or even just highlighting key information. Find what works for you. And don't be afraid to ask questions if something isn't clear. Seriously, no question is dumb.

Alex: I always feel a bit embarrassed to ask.

Sarah: Don't! Chances are, someone else has the same question. Plus, teachers are there to help. Think of it as actively engaging with the material. Another thing that helped me was planning my time.

Alex: Time management... that's a weak spot for me.

Sarah: It takes practice. Try breaking down big assignments into smaller tasks and setting deadlines for each. Even just dedicating a specific time each day for studying can make a difference. It's about creating a consistent routine.

Alex: That sounds... organized. I'm more of a "do it when I feel like it" kind of person.

Sarah: I used to be too! But trust me, a little structure can actually free up your time in the long run. And don't forget the power of understanding the material rather than just memorizing it.

Alex: That's where I often get stuck. I can memorize facts, but then I don't really get how they connect.

Sarah: Try explaining concepts in your own words, or even teaching them to someone else. That really solidifies your understanding. And don't be afraid to seek help when you need it. Talk to your teachers, form study groups with classmates... you don't have to do this alone.

Alex: Study groups... that's an idea. I usually just study by myself.

Sarah: It can be really helpful to hear different perspectives and work through problems together. And most importantly, Alex, be patient with yourself.

Improvement takes time and effort. There will be setbacks, but don't let them discourage you. Celebrate the small victories along the way.

Alex: So, it's not about some magic formula, but more about consistent effort and the right strategies?

Sarah: Exactly! And believing that you can do it. Your mindset is so important. Instead of thinking "I'm not good at this," try thinking "I'm going to work on getting better at this." You've got this, Alex. I really believe that with a focused effort, you'll see a big difference.

Alex: Wow, Sarah, this actually helps a lot. I feel a bit more motivated now. Thanks for talking with me.

Sarah: Anytime, Alex! We all need a little encouragement sometimes. And hey, maybe we can even study together sometime.

Alex: I'd really like that. Thanks again, Sarah.

How does this initial dialogue feel? We can continue to build on this or explore other motivational approaches if you'd like! 😊

Useful 125 Verbs

To be	être
To have	avoir
To do	faire
To say	dire
To be able to	pouvoir
To go	aller
To see	voir
To know	savoir
To want	vouloir
To come	venir
to have to, to must	falloir
to have, to should, to owe	devoir
to believe	croire
to find	trouver
to give	donner
to take	prendre
to speak, to talk	parler
to like, to love	aimer
to pass	passer
to put	mettre
to ask	demander
to hold	tenir
to seem	sembler
to leave (thing)	laisser
to stay	rester
to think	penser
to hear	entendre
to watch, look at	regarder
to answer	répondre
to give back	rendre
to know	connaître
to appear, to seem	paraître
to arrive	arriver
to feel	sentir
to wait for	attendre
to live	vivre

to search for	chercher
to go out, to leave, to exit, to take out	sortir
to understand	comprendre
to wear, to carry	porter
to become	devenir
to enter	entrer
to come back	revenir
to write	écrire
to call	appeler
to fall	tomber
to take back	reprendre
to start	commencer
to follow	suivre
to show	montrer
to leave	(a place) partir
to die	mourir
to open	ouvrir
to read	lire
to stop	arrêter
to serve	servir
to throw	jeter
to receive	recevoir
to go up, to bring up	monter
to raise	lever
to act	behave agir
It's a matter of	Il s'agit de...
to lose	perdre
to listen	écouter
to continue	continuer
to smile	sourire
to perceive	apercevoir
to recognize	reconnaître
to add	ajouter
to play	jouer
to walk	marcher
to keep	garder
to be missing	manquer
to find again, meet up with	retrouver
to go downstairs, bring down	descendre
to recall	rappeler
to leave, to quit	quitter
to turn	tourner
to finish	finir
to yell	crier
to run	courir
to permit	permettre
to dream, to reflect	songer

to offer	offrir
to introduce	présenter
to learn	apprendre
to suffer	souffrir
to exist	exister
to send	envoyer
to explain	expliquer
to eat	manger
to be worth	valoir
to forget	oublier
to return, go back	rentrer
to push	pousser
to occupy	occuper
to count	compter
to prevent, to stop, to impede	empêcher
to please	plaire
to work	travailler
to exclaim, to cry out	s'écrier
to form	former
to sleep	dormir
to dare	oser
to meet	rencontrer
to repeat	répéter
to return	retourner
to change	changer
to raise, bring up	élever
to touch	toucher
to hope	espérer
to live somewhere, to remain	demeurer
to feel, to experience, to suffer	éprouver
to bring	apporter
to cry	pleurer
to judge	juger
to matter, be important	importer
to drive	conduire
to hug, to kiss, to embrace	embrasser
to tell, recount	raconter
to fear	craindre
to cause	causer
to sing	chanter
to hide	cacher
to try	essayer
to sit	s'asseoir
to advance, to go forward	avancer
to produce	produire
to lay down, to set down, to pose/ask	poser

Useful 500 words

معناها	الكلمة	No.	معناها	الكلمة	No.
تقريباً	About	٢	قادر	Able	١
يضيف	add	٤	فوق	above	٣
بعد	after	٦	خائف	afraid	٥
ضد	Against	٨	مرة أخرى	Again	٧
منذ، ماض	Ago	١٠	عمر	age	٩
هواء	Air	١٢	يوافق	Agree	١١
يسمح	Allow	١٤	كل، جميع	All	١٣
دائماً	Always	١٦	أيضاً	Also	١٥
بين ، وسط	Among	١٨	أكون (للمتكلم)	Am	١٧
غضب، يغضب	Anger	٢٠	واو العطف	And	١٩
أي ، أيما	Any	٢٢	إجابة ، يجيب	Answer	٢١
تفاحة	Apple	٢٤	يظهر، يبدو	Appear	٢٣
يصل	Arrive	٢٦	يكون (للمجمع)	Are	٢٥
يسأل ، يطلب	Ask	٢٨	مثل ، كان	As	٢٧
خلف، ظهر	Back	٣٠	رضيع، صغير	Baby	٢٩
كرة	Ball	٣٢	سيء ، رديء	Bad	٣١
بنك ، ضفة	Bank	٣٤	موز	Banana	٣٣
أساس، قاعدة	Base	٣٦	قضيب، قطعة، بار	Bar	٣٥
يكون، يصبح	Be	٣٨	مضرب، خفاش	Bat	٣٧
يضرب، يهزم، يتغلب	Beat	٤٠	يحمل، يتحمل، تلد	Bear	٣٩
مرير، فراش	Bed	٤٢	جمال، وسامة	Beauty	٤١
يبدأ	Begin	٤٤	قبل، أمام	Before	٤٣
يؤمن، يصدق	Believe	٤٦	خلف، وراء	Behind	٤٥
أحسن ، أفضل من	Better	٤٨	أحسن، أفضل ما يكون	Best	٤٧
كبير	Big	٥٠	بين ، وسط	Between	٤٩
أسود	Black	٥٢	طائر	Bird	٥١
أزرق	Blue	٥٤	دم	Blood	٥٣
قارب، زورق، مركب	Boat	٥٦	لوح خشبي	Board	٥٥
عظم	Bone	٥٨	جسم	Body	٥٧
كلا	Both	٦٠	كتاب، يحجز غرفة	Book	٥٩
صندوق	Box	٦٢	يزعج	Bother	٦١
خبز	Bread	٦٤	ولد ، صبي	Boy	٦٣
يتنفس	Breath	٦٦	يكسر	Break	٦٥
أخ	Brother	٦٨	يحضر	Bring	٦٧
يبنى	Build	٧٠	بني	Brown	٦٩
مشغول	Busy	٧٢	يحترق، يشتعل، يحرق	Burn	٧١
بجانب، بواسطة	By	٧٤	لكن، غير، سوى	But	٧٣

نداء، ينادي، يتلفن	Call	٧٦	يشتري	Buy	٧٥
عاصمة، رأس المال	Capital	٧٨	يستطيع، يقدر، علة	Can	٧٧
بطاقة، ورقة لعب	Card	٨٠	سيارة	Car	٧٩
يحمل	Carry	٨٢	يعتني، يهتم	Care	٨١
قطعة	Cat	٨٤	حقيقية، عليه	Case	٨٣
سبب، يسبب	Cause	٨٦	يمسك، يقبض على	Catch	٨٥
فرصة	Chance	٨٨	مركز، وسط، محور	Center	٨٧
يشحن، يهتم	Charge	٩٠	يغير، يبدل، يصرف	Change	٨٩
دجاجة	Chicken	٩٢	غشاش، يغش، يحتال	Cheat	٩١
يختار	Choose	٩٤	طفل	Child	٩٣
مدينة	City	٩٦	حلقة، دائرة، يدور	Circle	٩٥
نظيف، ينظف	Clean	٩٨	درجة، طبقة، فصل	Class	٩٧
ساعة حائط	Clock	١٠٠	واضح، صاف	Clear	٩٩
سحابة	Cloud	١٠٢	يغلق، يقلل	Close	١٠١
لون، يلون	Color	١٠٤	بارد، زكلم	Cold	١٠٣
شركة، رفقة	Company	١٠٦	يأتي، يجيء	Come	١٠٥
يكمل، كامل	complete	١٠٨	يقارن	Compare	١٠٧
معتدل البرودة، بارد	Cool	١١٠	يطبخ	Cook	١٠٩
ذرة	Corn	١١٢	ينسخ، نسخة	Copy	١١١
يصحح، يعدل، صحيح	Correct	١١٤	زاوية	Corner	١١٣
يعد، يحصي	Count	١١٦	ثمن، كلفة، يثمن	Cost	١١٥
غطاء، يغطي	Cover	١١٨	بلد، وطن	Country	١١٧
يخلق	Create	١٢٠	بقرة	Cow	١١٩
صليب، يعبر	Cross	١٢٢	جريمة	Crime	١٢١
فنجان، كوب	Cup	١٢٤	يصيح، ييكي	Cry	١٢٣
رقصة، يرقص	Dance	١٢٦	يقص، يقطع	Cut	١٢٥
داكن، قاتم	Dark	١٢٨	خطر	Danger	١٢٧
يقرر	Decide	١٣٠	يوم	Day	١٢٩
يهزم	Defeat	١٣٢	عميق	Deep	١٣١
يؤجل	Delay	١٣٤	درجة، شهادة	Degree	١٣٣
يودع، عربون	Deposit	١٣٦	يتوقف على، يعتمد على	Depend	١٣٥
صحراء	Desert	١٣٨	يصف	Describe	١٣٧
يطور	Develop	١٤٠	تصميم، يصمم	Design	١٣٩
يموت	Die	١٤٢	قاموس	Dictionary	١٤١
صعب	Difficult	١٤٤	مختلف	Different	١٤٣
يناقش	Discuss	١٤٦	مباشر، يوجه	Direct	١٤٥
يفعل، يعمل	Do	١٤٨	يقسم	Divide	١٤٧
كلب	Dog	١٥٠	دكتور، طبيب	Doctor	١٤٩
مزدوج، مضاعف	Double	١٥٢	باب، مدخل	Door	١٥١
تحت	Down	١٥٤	شك، يشك، يرتاب	Doubt	١٥٣
حلم، يحلم	Dream	١٥٦	يسحب، يرسم	Draw	١٥٥

يقود ، يسوق	Drive	١٥٨	مشروب ، يشرب	Drink	١٥٧
أثناء ، خلال	During	١٦٠	جاف ، يجفف	Dry	١٥٩
مبكر	Early	١٦٢	أذن	Ear	١٦١
سهل	Easy	١٦٤	شرق	East	١٦٣
بيضة	Egg	١٦٦	يأكل	Eat	١٦٥
أي من ، إحداهما	Either	١٦٨	ثمانية	Eight	١٦٧
نهاية ، ينهي	End	١٧٠	فارغ ، يفرغ	Empty	١٦٩
كافي ، يكفي	Enough	١٧٢	خصم ، عدو	Enemy	١٧١
حتى	Even	١٧٤	مساوي ، يساوي	Equal	١٧٣
يشرح	Explain	١٧٦	مساء	Evening	١٧٥
وجه ، يواجه	Face	١٧٨	عين	Eye	١٧٧
زائف	False	١٨٠	الخريف ، يسقط	Fall	١٧٩
مزرعة	Farm	١٨٢	بعيد	Far	١٨١
أنثى	Female	١٨٤	سمين	Fat	١٨٣
نهائي	Final	١٨٦	يملا ، يحشو	Fill	١٨٥
إصبع	Finger	١٨٨	يجد	Find	١٨٧
نار	Fire	١٩٠	ينهي	Finish	١٨٩
سمكة	Fish	١٩٢	أول	First	١٩١
خمسة	Five	١٩٤	يلانم ، مناسب لـ	Fit	١٩٣
راية ، علم	Flag	١٩٦	يصلح	Fix	١٩٥
طعام	Food	١٩٨	ذبابة ، يطير	Fly	١٩٧
ينسى	Forget	٢٠٠	قدم	Foot	١٩٩
أربعة	Four	٢٠٢	شوكة	Fork	٢٠١
ممتلئ	Full	٢٠٤	حر ، يحرر	Free	٢٠٣
فتاة	Girl	٢٠٦	مستقبل	Future	٢٠٥
يذهب	Go	٢٠٨	يعطي	Give	٢٠٧
جيد	Good	٢١٠	ذهب	Gold	٢٠٩
عظيم	Great	٢١٢	رمادي	Gray	٢١١
بندقية ، مسدس	Gun	٢١٤	أخضر	Green	٢١٣
يد	Hand	٢١٦	شعر	Hair	٢١٥
صعب	Hard	٢١٨	سعيد	Happy	٢١٧
يملك	Have	٢٢٠	قبعة	Hat	٢١٩
رأس	Head	٢٢٢	هو	He	٢٢١
قلب	Heart	٢٢٤	يسمع	Hear	٢٢٣
عالي	High	٢٢٦	هنا	Here	٢٢٥
بيت ، منزل	Home	٢٢٨	ثقب ، حفرة	Hole	٢٢٧
حصان	Horse	٢٣٠	أمل ، يأمل	Hope	٢٢٩
حار	Hot	٢٣٢	مستشفى	Hospital	٢٣١
ساعة	Hour	٢٣٤	فندق	Hotel	٢٣٣
كيف ، كم	How	٢٣٦	بيت ، منزل	House	٢٣٥
أنا	I	٢٣٨	يؤلم ، يجرح	Hurt	٢٣٧

مريض	Ill	٢٤٠	ثلج	Ice	٢٣٩
يكون	Is	٢٤٢	مهم	Important	٢٤١
ضمير مفرد لغير العقل	It	٢٤٤	جزيرة	Island	٢٤٣
يربط ، يصل ، يلتحق بـ	Join	٢٤٦	عمل، شغل، وظيفة	Job	٢٤٥
يقتل	Kill	٢٤٨	مفتاح	Key	٢٤٧
ركبة	Knee	٢٥٠	لطيف ، نوع	Kind	٢٤٩
يعرف	Know	٢٥٢	سكين	Knife	٢٥١
أرض	Land	٢٥٤	سيدة	Lady	٢٥٣
آخر	Last	٢٥٦	لغة	Language	٢٥٥
يغادر	Leave	٢٥٨	يتعلم	Learn	٢٥٧
ساق	Leg	٢٦٠	يسار	Left	٢٥٩
مثل ، يرغب	Like	٢٦٢	أقل	Less	٢٦١
شفة	Lip	٢٦٤	خط	Line	٢٦٣
قليل ، صغير	Little	٢٦٦	يصغي ، ينصت	Listen	٢٦٥
طويل	Long	٢٦٨	يعيش ، يقيم ، يحيا	Live	٢٦٧
يخسر ، يضع	Lose	٢٧٠	ينظر ، يراقب	Look	٢٦٩
حب ، يحب	Love	٢٧٢	عال ، مرتفع ، صاخب	Loud	٢٧١
يعمل ، يصنع	Make	٢٧٤	منخفض	Low	٢٧٣
رجل	Man	٢٧٦	ذكر	Male	٢٧٥
يتزوج	Marry	٢٧٨	كثير ، العديد	Many	٢٧٧
مزيج ، يمزج ، يخلط	Mix	٢٨٠	ربما	May	٢٧٩
صباح	Morning	٢٨٢	قمر	Moon	٢٨١
أم	Mother	٢٨٤	أكثر ، معظم	Most	٢٨٣
كثير	Much	٢٨٦	فم	Mouth	٢٨٥
ظفر ، مسمار	Nail	٢٨٨	يجب ، يتوجب	Must	٢٨٧
قريب ، يقترب	Near	٢٩٠	ضيق ، يضيق	Narrow	٢٨٩
رقبة	Neck	٢٩٢	ضروري	Necessary	٢٩١
شبكة	Net	٢٩٤	حاجة ، يحتاج	Need	٢٩٣
ليل	Night	٢٩٦	جديد	New	٢٩٥
لا	No	٢٩٨	تسعة	Nine	٢٩٧
عادي	Normal	٣٠٠	الظهر،منتصف النهار	Noon	٢٩٩
أنف	Nose	٣٠٢	شمال	North	٣٠١
الآن	Now	٣٠٤	لا شيء	Nothing	٣٠٣
مكتب	Office	٣٠٦	رقم ، عدد	Number	٣٠٥
كبير في السن ، قديم	Old	٣٠٨	زيت ، نפט	Oil	٣٠٧
فقط	Only	٣١٠	واحد	One	٣٠٩
عكس ، أمام	Opposite	٣١٢	يفتح	Open	٣١١
برتقال ، برتقالي	Orange	٣١٤	أو	Or	٣١٣
يمر ، يتجاوز	Pass	٣١٦	آخر ، غير ، خلاف	Other	٣١٥
يدفع	Pay	٣١٨	ماضي	Past	٣١٧
قلم رصاص	Pencil	٣٢٠	قلم	Pen	٣١٩

صورة	Picture	٣٢٢	الناس	People	٣٢١
طائرة	Plane	٣٢٤	خنزير	Pig	٣٢٣
يلعب	Play	٣٢٦	طبق ، صحن	Plate	٣٢٥
فقير	Poor	٣٢٨	يسر ، يرضي	Please	٣٢٧
خاص	Private	٣٣٠	ممکن ، محتمل	Possible	٣٢٩
يضع	Put	٣٣٢	عام ، مشاع ، جمهور	Public	٣٣١
تماماً ، إلى حد بعيد	Quite	٣٣٤	سريع	Quick	٣٣٣
يقرأ	Read	٣٣٦	مطر ، تمطر	Rain	٣٣٥
أحمر	Red	٣٣٨	جاهز	Ready	٣٣٧
إجابة ، يجيب	Reply	٣٤٠	عادي ، نظامي	Regular	٣٣٩
صحيح ، يمين	Right	٣٤٢	مسؤول عن	Responsible	٣٤١
يركض	Run	٣٤٤	غرفة ، حيز	Room	٣٤٣
أمن	Safe	٣٤٦	حزين	Sad	٣٤٥
مطابق ، نفس الشيء	Same	٣٤٨	تخفيض ، يبحر ، يخفض	Sail	٣٤٧
مدرسة	School	٣٥٠	يقول	Say	٣٤٩
يبحث	Search	٣٥٢	بحر	Sea	٣٥١
سر	Secret	٣٥٤	ثاني ، ثانية	Second	٣٥٣
يرسل	Send	٣٥٦	يرى	See	٣٥٥
يجلس ، يرتب	Set	٣٥٨	جاد ، جدي	Serious	٣٥٧
حاد ، ذكي	Sharp	٣٦٠	سبعة	Seven	٣٥٩
سفينة	Ship	٣٦٢	هي	She	٣٦١
نعل ، حذاء	Shoe	٣٦٤	قميص	Shirt	٣٦٣
يغلق	Shut	٣٦٦	قصير	Short	٣٦٥
لافتة ، رمز ، يوقع	Sign	٣٦٨	جانب ، ناحية	Side	٣٦٧
بسيط	Simple	٣٧٠	فضي ، فضة	Silver	٣٦٩
أخت ، ممرضة ، راهبة	Sister	٣٧٢	أعزب ، مفرد	Single	٣٧١
ستة	Six	٣٧٤	يجلس ، يقعد	Sit	٣٧٣
جلد	Skin	٣٧٦	قياس ، مقاس	Size	٣٧٥
ينام	Sleep	٣٧٨	سماء	Sky	٣٧٧
صغير	Small	٣٨٠	يبطئ ، يتمهل	Slow	٣٧٩
دخان ، يدخن	Smoke	٣٨٢	ابتسامة ، يبتسم	Smile	٣٨١
بعض	Some	٣٨٤	ناعم	Soft	٣٨٣
صوت	Sound	٣٨٦	أغنية	Song	٣٨٥
يتكلم	Speak	٣٨٨	جنوب	South	٣٨٧
يتهمجى	Spell	٣٩٠	خاص	Special	٣٨٩
ملعقة	Spoon	٣٩٢	ينفق ، يمضي	Spend	٣٩١
يقف ، يقوم	Stand	٣٩٤	ربيع ، زنبرك ، ينبوع	Spring	٣٩٣
يبدأ	Start	٣٩٦	نجمة	Star	٣٩٥
معدة	Stomach	٣٩٨	يلصق	Stick	٣٩٧
قصة	Story	٤٠٠	محل ، يخزن	Store	٣٩٩
شارع	Street	٤٠٢	غريب	Strange	٤٠١

يدرس	Study	٤٠٤	قوي	Strong	٤٠٣
سكر	Sugar	٤٠٦	مفاجئ	Sudden	٤٠٥
شمس	Sun	٤٠٨	صيف	Summer	٤٠٧
حلو	Sweet	٤١٠	أكيد	Sure	٤٠٩
طاولة	Table	٤١٢	يسبح	Swim	٤١١
يتكلم	Talk	٤١٤	يأخذ	Take	٤١٣
يعلم	Teach	٤١٦	طويل	Tall	٤١٥
يقول ، يخبر ، يروي	Tell	٤١٨	فريق	Team	٤١٧
اختبار ، يختبر	Test	٤٢٠	عشرة	Ten	٤١٩
هناك	There	٤٢٢	ذلك ، الذي	That	٤٢١
شيء	Thing	٤٢٤	هم	They	٤٢٣
هذا	This	٤٢٦	يفكر ، يعتقد ، يظن	Think	٤٢٥
حلق	Throat	٤٢٨	ثلاثة	Three	٤٢٧
بطاقة ، تذكرة	Ticket	٤٣٠	خلال ، بواسطة	Through	٤٢٩
متعب	Tired	٤٣٢	وقت	Time	٤٣١
غداً	Tomorrow	٤٣٤	معاً	Together	٤٣٣
سن	Tooth	٤٣٦	لسان	Tongue	٤٣٥
قطار	Train	٤٣٨	مدينة ، بلدة	Town	٤٣٧
يسافر	Travel	٤٤٠	يترجم	Translate	٤٣٩
شجرة	Tree	٤٤٢	طبق الطعام ، صينية	Tray	٤٤١
يحاول	Try	٤٤٤	حقيقي ، صادق	True	٤٤٣
اثنين	Two	٤٤٦	يلف ، يدور ، يحول	Turn	٤٤٥
مظلة	Umbrella	٤٤٨	نوع ، يطبع	Type	٤٤٧
يستخدم ، يستعمل	Use	٤٥٠	يفهم	Understand	٤٤٩
جداً	Very	٤٥٢	معتاد ، مألوف	Usual	٤٥١
يستيقظ ، ينهض	Wake up	٤٥٤	ينتظر	Wait	٤٥٣
يريد	Want	٤٥٦	جدار	Wall	٤٥٥
دافئ	Warm	٤٥٨	حرب	War	٤٥٧
يغسل ، يغتسل	Wash	٤٦٠	كان	Was	٤٥٩
ماء ، يروي	Water	٤٦٢	يرقب ، يحرس ، ساعة يد	Watch	٤٦١
نحن	We	٤٦٤	طريق	Way	٤٦٣
يرتدي ، يلبس	Wear	٤٦٦	ضعيف ، واهن	Weak	٤٦٥
جيداً ، تماماً ، حسناً	Well	٤٦٨	أسبوع	Week	٤٦٧
غرب	West	٤٧٠	كانوا	Were	٤٦٩
ماذا ، ما	What	٤٧٢	رطب ، مبتل	Wet	٤٧١
أين ، حيث	Where	٤٧٤	متى ، عندما	When	٤٧٣
بينما ، حينما	While	٤٧٦	أي ، التي ، ما ، الذي	Which	٤٧٥
الذي ، من هو	Who	٤٧٨	أبيض	White	٤٧٧
زوجة	Wife	٤٨٠	لماذا	Why	٤٧٩
يفوز ، يربح	Win	٤٨٢	سوف ، وصية ، يرغب	Will	٤٨١
شتاء	Winter	٤٨٤	نافذة	Window	٤٨٣

مع	With	٤٨٦	حكيم	Wise	٤٨٥
كلمة	Word	٤٨٨	امراة	Woman	٤٨٧
عالم ، دنيا	World	٤٩٠	عمل ، شغل	Work	٤٨٩
يكتب	Write	٤٩٢	قلق ، يقلق	Worry	٤٩١
سنة	Year	٤٩٤	خطأ	Wrong	٤٩٣
نعم	Yes	٤٩٦	أصفر	Yellow	٤٩٥
أنت	You	٤٩٨	أمس	Yesterday	٤٩٧
صفر	Zero	٥٠٠	شاب	Young	٤٩٩

Conjugation for verb to play

Nominal Forms

Infinitive: to play
Participle: played
Gerund: playing

Indicative

Subjunctive

Present

Perfect

Present

Perfect

I play
you play
he, she, it plays
we play
you play
they play

I have played
you have played
he, she, it has played
we have played
you have played
they have played

I play
you play
he, she, it play
we play
you play
they play

I have played
you have played
he, she, it have played
we have played
you have played
they have played

Past

Pluperfect

Imperfect

Pluperfect

I played
you played
he, she, it played
we played
you played
they played

I had played
you had played
he, she, it had played
we had played
you had played
they had played

I played
you played
he, she, it played
we played
you played
they played

I had played
you had played
he, she, it had played
we had played
you had played
they had played

Future

Future perfect

I will play
you will play
he, she, it will play
we will play
you will play
they will play

I will have played
you will have played
he, she, it will have played
we will have played
you will have played
they will have played



Conditional

Imperative

Present		Perfect	
I	would play	I	would have played
you	would play	you	would have played
he,she,it	would play	he,she,it	would have played
we	would play	we	would have played
you	would play	you	would have played
they	would play	they	would have played

you play
we Let's play
you play

Progressive (Continuous) Forms

Indicative

Conditional

Present		Perfect		Present		Perfect	
I	am playing	I	have been playing	I	would be playing	I	would have been playing
you	are playing	you	have been playing	you	would be playing	you	would have been playing
he,she,it	is playing	he,she,it	has been playing	he,she,it	would be playing	he,she,it	would have been playing
we	are playing	we	have been playing	we	would be playing	we	would have been playing
you	are playing	you	have been playing	you	would be playing	you	would have been playing
they	are playing	they	have been playing	they	would be playing	they	would have been playing

Past

Pluperfect

I	was playing	I	had been playing
you	were playing	you	had been playing
he,she,it	was playing	he,she,it	had been playing
we	were playing	we	had been playing
you	were playing	you	had been playing
they	were playing	they	had been playing

Future

Future perfect

I	will be playing	I	will have been playing
you	will be playing	you	will have been playing
he,she,it	will be playing	he,she,it	will have been playing
we	will be playing	we	will have been playing
you	will be playing	you	will have been playing
they	will be playing	they	will have been playing

Title index

INTRODUCTION	3
PRONUNCIATION RULES	10
FIRST LEVEL	35
First Lesson 1 : Parts of speech and Definite & Indefinite Articles	35
1- PARTS OF SPEECH:	35
2- The indefinite articles are : A and AN	37
Second lesson 2: the simple present of verb to be Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation	40
Second lesson 2: the simple present of verb to be Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation	40
1- *Positive*	40
1- With pronoun	40
2- With subject	40
2- *Negative*	43
3- *Interrogation*	46
Third lesson 3 : The simple present of all verbs : Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation	50
Third lesson 3 : The simple present of all verbs : Affirmative = Positive / Negative / Interrogation	50
1- Positive.....	50
2- *Negative* :	60
3- Interrogation* :	67
REVIEWS : *Subject pronoun:*	68
Fourth lesson 4: Possessive	72
1. Object pronoun	72
2. Possessive adjectives	75
3. Pronoun possessive	77
4. Pronoun reflexive	79
5-Possessive adjective in question:	82
6-Possessive pronouns in Questions	83
Different between *possessive adjectives* and *possessive pronouns* in question sentence	83
1. Answer by Possessive pronouns.....	83
*Questions in his and hers and its and theirs. * possessive pronouns	83
2. Answer by Possessive adjectives	84
*Questions in his and her and its and their. * possessive adjectives	84
Fifth lesson 5 : question words.....	87
Fifth lesson 5 : question words.....	87
1. WHO	87
1- Who in to be :	87
2- Who in to do :	87

2. Whose :	88
*3. What : *	91
1. To do	91
2. To be	91
3. Possessive adjectives:	91
4. What used in sentences by link.	91
4. Why	92
1-Why In to be :	92
2-Why in to do :	92
5. When	92
1-In to be	92
2-When in to do :	92
3-Expression *when* in sentence (عندما)	92
6. where	93
1-In to be :	93
2- in to do	93
3-Expression *where* in sentence	93
7. Which ايهما	93
1-In to do	93
2-Expression *which* in sentence الذي او التي	93
8.how	93
1-In to be	93
2-In to do	93
9.how old are you? كم عمرك	94
10.how many times = *how often*	94
11. How many	94
1-To be	94
2-To do	94
12. How much	95
1-To do	95
2-To be	95
13. How long	95
1 . Time :	95
2 : قياس العرض و طول الاشياء	95
14. How high	96
15. How tall	96
16. How wide	96
17. How deep	96
18. How far	96
19. How heavy	96

20. How much weight.....	97
21 . How fast	97
1-*Writing in routine daily*	104
2-Writing for presentation :	104
3-Writing for dialogue about dating	105
4-*Dialogue for dating*	105
SECOND LEVEL	124
Sixth lesson 6 : Family Members	124
Sixth lesson 6 : Family Members	124
Seventh Lesson 7: Countable and Uncountable Nouns	130
Seventh Lesson 7: Countable and Uncountable Nouns	130
A- Noun Countable	130
B-noun uncountable*	132
C-Special Rules:	134
D- Examples in Countable VS Uncountable	136
1-Nouns Countable.....	136
2-Noun Uncountable	136
Eighth lesson 8: There is / There are	137
1) - there is : a - an - one (1) : Singular:	137
*2) there are: Some-many-lot of - Few - numbers => plural: *	137
3)- there is : some / a lot of:	138
4)-interrogation /questions in:*	138
1→ there is // there are in countable noun	138
2) --> there is in uncountable noun:	139
Ninth lesson 9: Expressing permission	153
1- *Communication / interrogation. *	153
2- *Vocabulary*/*communication*	154
Tenth lesson: Expressing Time.....	163
5-WRITING: JOURNEY IN MARKET TRADITIONNAL	176
6-WRITING: REQUESTS PERMISSION	177
1. Beginning writing*	177
2. Intermediate writing*	178
7-Writing: Eating Habits.....	179
Food and Drink: Vocabulary : Fruits.....	180
Food and Drink: Vocabulary Vegetables	181
Food and Drink: Vocabulary : Other Types of Food	184
1-Reading small story	187
8-Writing: Dream house *	188
Vocabulary: Parts of a house; Bedroom	188

THIRD LEVEL	195
THIRD LEVEL	195
Eleventh lesson 11: Present Continuous	195
Positive / Negative / interrogation	195
Eleventh lesson 11: Present Continuous Positive / Negative / interrogation	195
1. positive / Affirmative	195
2. Negative: *	196
*3. Interrogation: *	196
4. different between present Simple and present continuous	197
5. Going to نتيجة حتمية	197
twelfth lesson 12: Present Perfect Positive / Negative / interrogation	219
Positive / Negative / interrogation	219
CONCLUSION	223
Thirteenth lesson 13: Giving suggestions	242
Thirteenth lesson 13: Giving suggestions	243
Fourteenth lesson 14: Prepositions	251
Fifteenth lesson 15: Adverbs of frequency	261
9-Writing: describe the weather	268
1-Small Story: read, understand, and answer:	271
Story's Comprehension Questions	273
10.writing about good friend	274
FOURTH LEVEL	275
Sixteenth lesson 16: Verb to be in past Positive / Negative / Interrogation	275
Sixteenth lesson 16: Verb to be in past:	275
Positive / Negative / Interrogation	275
1-*Positive*	275
2-*Negative*	275
3-*Interrogation*	276
Seventeenth lesson 17: Verb to do in past :Positive / Negative /Interrogation	284
Seventeenth lesson 17: Verb to do in past	285
Positive / Negative /Interrogation	285
1*Positive*	285
1. Verbs in regular:	285
2. Verbs in irregular:	287
2-*Negative*: did not	294
3-*Interrogation*:	295
Eighteenth lesson 18: Verb to be in future Positive / Negative / Interrogation	319
1-*Positive*	319

2- *Negative*	319
3- *Interrogation*	320
Nineteenth lesson: Verb to do in future	321
Positive / Negative / Interrogation	321
Nineteenth lesson: Verb to do in future Positive / Negative / Interrogation	321
1- *Positive*	321
2- *Negative:	321
3- *Interrogation:	322
4- *Different between present continuous and future simple*	323
Twenty lesson 20: future continuous	332
1- *Positive*	332
2- *Negative*	332
3- *interrogation*	333
Twenty-first lesson 21: Verb to be in past continuous Positive / Negative / Interrogation	341
1- *Positive*	341
2- *Negative*	341
3- *Interrogation*	342
Twenty-second lessons 22: past perfect Positive / Negative / Interrogation	354
Twenty-second lessons 22: past perfect	355
Positive / Negative / Interrogation	355
1. Positive	355
2. Negative	355
3. Interrogation	356
Twenty-third lesson 23: future perfect	364
1. Positive	364
2. Negative	364
3. Interrogation	365
Twenty-fourth lesson 24: conditional	378
Twenty-fourth lesson 24: conditional	378
Part 1 We can make a zero conditional sentence	378
Part 2 The first conditional has the present simple	379
Part 3 The second conditional.....	380
Part 4 We make the third conditional	381
Twenty-fifth lesson 25: Comparative and Superlative Adjectives	397
Twenty-fifth lesson 25: Comparative and Superlative Adjectives	397
1-Adjectives with one syllable	397
2-Adjectives with two syllables	398
3-Adjectives with more than two syllables.....	399

4-Irregular Adjectives.....	399
Twenty-sixth lesson: Modal Verbs.....	405
1-Probability.....	405
2-ABILITY	413
3-OBLIGATION	417
Twenty-Seventh lesson 27: Phrasal Verbs	422
Twenty-eighth lesson 28: Links between sentences	435
Twenty-ninth lesson 29: 'AS' AND 'LIKE'	443
Twenty-ninth lesson 29: 'AS' AND 'LIKE'	443
1-As	443
2-Like.....	444
3-'Like' vs 'as' for similarity	445
Thirtieth lesson 30: 'LET' AND 'MAKE'	448
Thirtieth lesson 30: 'LET' AND 'MAKE'	448
1-Let	448
2-Make	448
3-Choosing 'let' or 'make'	449
11-Writing: routine daily in past	450
2-Reading: traditional Moroccan	450
3-Reading: motivation about you can be good in school	454
Useful 125 Verbs	456
Useful 500 words.....	459
Conjugation for verb to play.....	466

Directed by president of association: IIMIRA HOUSSAM

English is becoming more and more popular every day, not only for the purpose of passing the classroom test, but also for the ability to master English language and acquire skills, which have positive implications for human life in general.

10 Tips for Learning English Quickly :

1. Learn good lessons of English
2. Listen as much as you can
3. Practice English with a partner
4. Read children's books and comic books in English
5. Write simple writing
6. Convert your life to English about get more words
7. Develop your level
8. Ask for help when you don't understand
9. Take advantage of free online media
10. Believe in yourself

Adresse : Place sidi maarouf 01 Rue 5 dar chabab sidi maarouf 01 Casablanca, Maroc
Email : saada.casablanca@gmail.com Tel : +212.616-852-355 / +212.628.279.161
Page en Facebook : <https://www.facebook.com/asc.moroccan>

